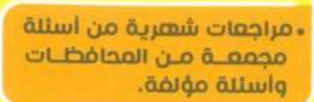


Gem



CONNECT 2025

4th PRIM.

SECOND TERM



Table of contents

Theme 3 My society مجتمعى

Unit 7 This is where I live هذا هو المكان الذى أعيش فيه

Unit 8 We had fun قضينا وقتًا ممتعًا

Unit 9 What makes us special? ما الذى يجعلنا مميزين؟



Theme 4 I'm a responsible person أنا شخص مسؤول

Unit 10 I enjoy my life أنا أستمتع بحياتى

Unit 11 What can we do? ماذا نستطيع أن نفعل؟

Unit 12 Dalia Saves the Village! داليا تنقذ القرية!

Final Revision & Exams

Theme 3

My society

مجتمعى

Unit 7

This is where I live

هذا هو المكان الذى أعيش فيه

Unit Objectives

- By the end of this unit, the student will be able to:
  - read about the Nile and why it is so important.
  - talk about his/her neighborhood in the past and now.
  - use regular and irregular past simple verb forms.
  - practice the long vowel sounds.
  - practice simplifying fractions.
  - write about a memory.

- بنهاية هذه الوحدة، سيكون التلميذ قادرًا على أن:
  - يقرأ عن نهر النيل ولماذا هو مهم للغاية.
  - يتحدث عن حيه فى الماضى والآن.
  - يستخدم صيغ الفعل الماضى البسيط المنتظم وغير المنتظم.
  - يتدرب على أصوات الحروف المتحركة الطويلة.
  - يتدرب على تبسيط الكسور.
  - يكتب عن ذكرى.

Did you know?

- The World * Capital of Cats in Romania has a cat * population that is four times larger than the human population.

* capital	عاصمة	* population	تعداد سكانى

Find out!

- In addition to Egypt, the Nile travels through 11 other African countries: Burundi, Tanzania, Rwanda, the Democratic Republic of the Congo, Kenya, Uganda, Eritrea, Sudan, Ethiopia, and South Sudan.



Lesson 1
The Nile
نهر النيل





1. Listen, point, and say:

استمع، أشر، وقل:

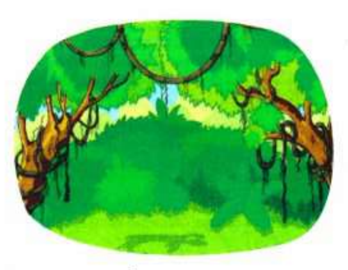


Main vocabulary


city
مدينة


building
مبنى


river
نهر


forest
غابة


desert
صحراء


village
قرية


oasis
واحة


mountain
جبل

Extra vocabulary

quiz	اختبار	the Nile	نهر النيل	interesting (adj.)	شيق/ مثير للاهتمام
life	حياة	sentence	جملة	true (adj.)	صحيح
the shortest (adj.)	الأقصر	the longest (adj.)	الأطول	the widest (adj.)	الأوسع
the world	العالم	both	كلاهما/ كلٌّ من	Amazon	نهر الأمازون
kilometer	كيلومتر (وحدة قياس)	center	مركز	earth	الأرض
moon	قمر	Australia	أستراليا	maybe	ربما
sure (adj.)	متأكد	Cairo Tower	برج القاهرة	guess	تخمين
clearly	بوضوح	branch	فرع	home	موطن (البيئة)
planet	كوكب	reptiles	زواحف	crocodile	تمساح



Let's say it right!

- لاحظ أن حرف الـ (c) ينطق /s/ (س) إذا أتى بعده (e - i - y) كما في (city).
- لاحظ أن حرف الـ (s) في (desert) ينطق /z/ (ز).
- لاحظ أن حرف الـ (g) في (village) ينطق /dʒ/ (دج).

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعـــال منتظمـة

Present		Past	Present		Past
sound	يبدو	sounded	try	يحاول	tried
travel	يسافر	traveled	guess	يخمن (يعتقد)	guessed
decide	يقرر	decided	check	يفحص/ يراجع	checked

Irregular verbs أفعـــال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
do	يقوم/ يفعل	did	know	يعرف	knew
bring	يُحضر	brought	choose	يختار	chose
think	يعتقد/ يفكر	thought	say	يقول	said

Expressions and Phrases

Let's (inf.) ...	هيا بنا ...	of course	طبعًا / بالتأكيد	the whole of Egypt	جميع أنحاء مصر
come on	هيـا	bring life	يجلب الحياة	Is it like ...?	هل هذا مثل ...؟
that sounds like	هذا يبدو مثل	last one	الأخير	home for	موطن لـ ...

Important sentences جمل هامة

* The Nile brings life to the whole of Egypt. يجلب النيل الحياة لمصر كلها.
* The Nile is 6,670 kilometers long. طول نهر النيل هو ٦,٦٧٠ كيلومتر.
* That's like traveling to the center of the earth. هذا مثل السفر إلى مركز الأرض.
* The Nile has two branches in Egypt. نهر النيل له فرعان فى مصر.

Take care!

أسـماء البلـدان والأنهـار والأماكـن المحـددة هـى أسـماء علـم، لـذا يجـب أن تبـدأ الكلمـة بأحـرف كبيـرة.

e.g.
* Egypt - Australia
* Nile - Amazon
* Cairo Tower

تتغير بعض الكلمات تمامًا فى صيغة الجمع ولا تتبع القواعد.



e.g. oasis واحة ⟶ oases واحات



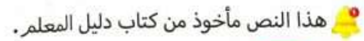


Check

Choose the correct answer: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. The (city – forest – oasis – earth) is in the desert.
2. Many different kinds of fish live in the (forest – river – oasis – building).
3. I'm studying because I have a/an (branch – tower – Amazon – quiz) tomorrow.
4. He didn't know the answer, but he (ate – thought – sounded – guessed) it.
5. (Deserts – Mountains – Forests – Oases) are usually very high.
6. There are a lot of trees and plants in the (forest – desert – sea – river).

Listening script page 4 SB







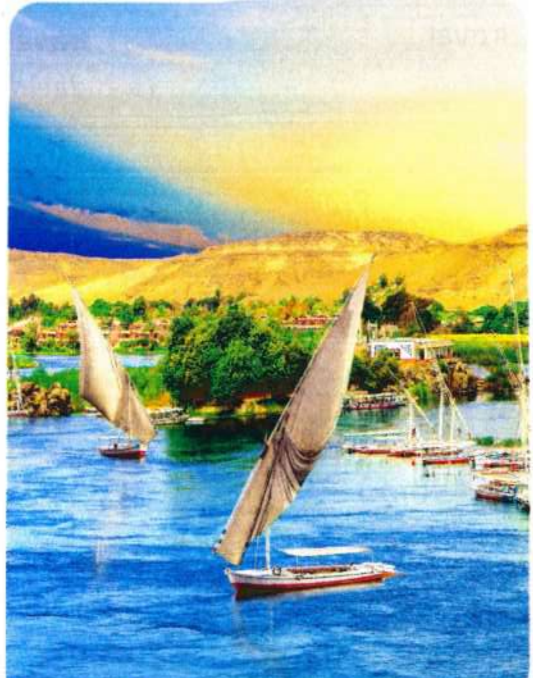
2. Listen, read, and role-play: استمع، اقرأ وتبادل الأدوار:



Sara

Let's do this quiz.

هيا بنا نقوم بهذا الاختبار.





Dina

What is it about?

عن ماذا يدور الاختبار؟

Sara

The Nile.

نهر النيل.



Dina

That sounds very interesting.

يبدو هذا مثيرًا للاهتمام.

Sara

Of course, the Nile brings life to the whole of Egypt. No River Nile, no Egypt. Come on, let's try. Question 1, which sentence is true? Is the Nile the shortest, the longest, or the widest river in the world?

بالطبع، يجلب النيل الحياة لجميع أنحاء مصر. إذا لم يكن هناك نهر النيل، فلا وجود لمصر. هيا بنا نحاول. السؤال الأول، أى جملة هى الصحيحة؟ هل نهر النيل هو أقصر، أم أطول، أم أوسع نهر فى العالم؟



Dina

Hmm. I don't know. I guess it's the longest, what do you think?

حسنًا. لا أعلم. أعتقد أنه الأطول، ماذا تعتقدين؟

Sara

Yeah, I know both the Amazon and the Nile are very, very long. Let's choose 'b'. Next question: 'The Nile is 6,670 kilometers long, is it like traveling to the center of the earth, traveling to the moon, or traveling to Australia?

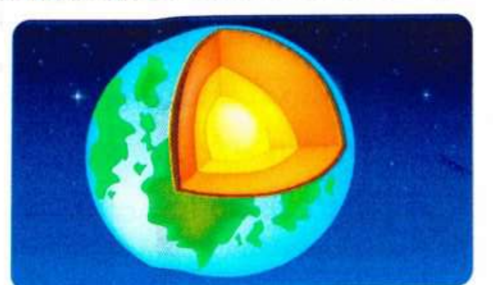
نعم، أعلم أن كلًا من نهرى الأمازون والنيل طويلان جدًا جدًا. دعينا نختار «ب». السؤال التالي: يبلغ طول النيل ٦٦٧٠ كيلومترًا ، هل هو مثل السفر إلى مركز الأرض، أم السفر إلى القمر، أم السفر إلى أستراليا؟



Dina

Maybe traveling to the center of the earth?

ربما السفر إلى مركز الأرض؟







Sara

Hmm, I'm not sure, that sounds like a good guess. Number 3, we need to look at the pictures and decide which river is the Nile.

حسنًا ، لست متأكدة، هذا يبدو وكأنه تخمين صحيح. رقم ٣ ، نحتاج إلى إلقاء نظرة على الصور وأن نقرر أى نهر هو النيل.



Dina

I think it's 'c'.

أعتقد أنه «ج».



Sara

Why?

لمـاذا؟



Dina

In 'c' you can see the Cairo Tower, so it's clearly in Egypt!

فى «ج» يمكنك أن ترى برج القاهرة ، لذلك من الواضح أنه فى مصر!



Sara

OK, last one. How many branches does the Nile have in Egypt?

حسنًا، الأخير. كم عدد فروع النيل فى مصر؟



Dina

I'm going to say three, that sounds like a good number. Erm, check on your phone.

سأقول ثلاثة، يبدو هذا عددًا صحيحًا. ممم ، تحقق من هاتفك.



Sara

OK. Aha! There are 2 branches!

حسنًا. آها! يوجد فرعان!

Language Notes

1 Superlative short adjectives:
صيغة التفضيل للصفات القصيرة:

the + adjective + est

e.g. The Nile is the longest river in the world.

2
للسؤال عن الطول نستخدم:

How long ...?

كم الطول ...؟

e.g. A: How long is the Nile?

B: It is 6,670 kilometers long.

3
للسؤال عن العدد نستخدم:

How many + اسم جمع ...?

كم العدد ...؟

e.g. A: How many branches does the Nile have in Egypt?

B: There are 2 branches.

4
لاقتراح فعل شيء ما نستخدم:

Let's + inf. الفعل في المصدر

هيا بنا ...

Let's do this quiz.



Find out!

The word 'Nile' actually comes from the Greek word 'Neilos', which was the name given to the river by the ancient Greeks.

كلمة «النيل» فى الواقع تأتى من الكلمة اليونانية «نيلوس»، وهو الاسم الذى أطلقه الإغريق القدماء على النهر.

Did you know?

The Nile is home for different kinds of fish, birds, and turtles. One of the planet's largest reptiles, the Nile crocodile, lives in it. It is the second largest reptile in the world. It is between 3.5 - 6 m long.

النيل موطن لأنواع مختلفة من الأسماك والطيور والسلاحف. يعيش فيه أحد أكبر الزواحف على كوكب الأرض ، وهو تمساح النيل. إنه ثانى أكبر الزواحف فى العالم. يتراوح طوله بين ٣٫٥ إلى ٦ أمتار.





Lesson 1



• Remembering • Understanding • Applying • Analyzing • Evaluating • Creating

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

(للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)

1. The Nile is .... for different kinds of fish and birds.
   a) village b) building c) home d) tower
2. The Nile .... is one of the planet's largest reptiles.
   a) fish b) horse c) dog d) crocodile
3. It is the .... largest reptile in the world.
   a) first b) second c) third d) fourth
4. It is between 3.5 - 6 m ....
   a) long b) tall c) high d) short

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. There are a lot of trees in the .... (بنى سويف 2024)
   a) forest b) desert c) river d) lake
2. Salma lives in a tall .... in the city. (القاهرة – إدارة الشرابية 2024)
   a) mountain b) building c) tree d) forest
3. Ali could climb the high .... last week. (أسيوط – إدارة منفلوط 2024)
   a) moon b) earth c) mountain d) oasis
4. We get water from the .... (الجيزة – إدارة البدرشين 2024)
   a) shop b) school c) river d) desert
5. The River Nile has two .... in Egypt. (الإسكندرية – إدارة غرب 2024)
   a) forests b) branches c) seas d) arms
6. The River Nile is the .... river in the world. (القليوبية – إدارة بنها 2024)
   a) tallest b) longest c) happiest d) thinnest
7. The Nile is about 6,670 .... long. (القليوبية – إدارة بنها 2024)
   a) kilometers b) kilograms c) tons d) centimeters
8. The Nile crocodile is one of the largest .... (دمياط – إدارة الزرقا 2024)
   a) insects b) reptiles c) plants d) forest

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص باستخدام الكلمات المساعدة:

branches – longest – crocodile – kinds – earth

(القليوبية – إدارة طوخ 2024)

The Nile is the longest river in the world. The Nile has two ....(1).......... . The Nile is 6,670 kilometers long. That's like traveling to the center of the ....(2).......... . The Nile is home for different ....(3).......... of fish, birds, and turtles. One of the planet's largest reptiles, the Nile ....(4).........., lives in it.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة:

الشرقية - إدارة منيا القمح 2024

In Egypt, there is a river called the Nile. The Nile is 6670 Km long. It's very long. It has many kinds of fish. It flows quietly, giving life to the land. Birds fly near it. There are trees on its two sides. Farmers plant seeds in its rich soil. The Nile flows leaving suitable mud for crops. The Nile is a friend to all. It brings life to the whole of Egypt.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 The opposite of the underlined word "long" is ....

a) wide b) tall c) high d) short

2 Farmers plant seeds in the rich .... of the Nile.

a) water b) branch c) bank d) soil

B Answer the following questions:

3 How long is the Nile?

....

4 What does the Nile do to Egypt?

....

5 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى:

الشرقية 2024

1 egypt is my beautiful home

....

2 Can you see the Cairo tower

....

6 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة من (18) كلمة باستخدام العناصر الآتية:

مجاب عنه صفحه 254

"The Nile"

بنى سويف - إدارة إهناسيا 2024

longest – home for – branches

....

....

....

....



Lesson 2





A short story about Grandpa قصة قصيرة عن الجد



1. Listen and say: استمع وقل:



Main vocabulary

memories	ذكريات	village	قرية	visitors	زوار
trucks	شاحنات	metal (adj.)	معدنى	curious (adj.)	فضولى

Extra vocabulary

box	صندوق	street	شارع	excited (adj.)	متحمس
Colossi of Memnon	تمثالا ممنون	quiet (adj.)	هادئ	then	ذلك الحين
road	طريق	grass	عشب	space	مكان
ground	أرض	smile	ابتسامة	inside	داخل
subjects	مواد دراسية	easy (adj.)	سهل	games	ألعاب

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعـال منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
live	يعيش	lived	cross	يعبر	crossed
wonder	يتعجب / يتساءل	wondered	start	يبدأ	started
pull	يسحب	pulled	bury	يدفن	buried

Irregular verbs أفعـال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
grow up	يكبر	grew up	dig	يحفر	dug
say	يقول	said	sit	يجلس	sat
feel	يشعر	felt	find	يجد	found

Expressions and Phrases

lots of	كثير من	from all around the world	من جميع أنحاء العالم
pull out	يسحب للخارج	a big smile on his face	ابتسامة كبيرة على وجهه
sit down	يجلس	look inside	ينظر للداخل
in the past	في الماضى	on the way home	في طريقك للمنزل

Grandpa and his box of memories الجد وصندوق ذكرياته



2. Look and read: انظر واقرأ:



"Look, this was my street." Grandpa was very excited. We were in the village where he grew up. It is near the Colossi of Memnon.

«انظر، كان هذا شارعى». كان جدى متحمسًا للغاية. كنا فى القرية التى نشأ فيها. إنها بالقرب من تمثالى ممنون.

"It was very quiet when I lived here," said Grandpa. "Now, there are lots of visitors from all around the world." "That's where my friend lived. We played football on this street. There were no cars then."

قال جدى: «كانت القرية هادئةً جدًا عندما كنت أعيش هنا». «الآن هناك الكثير من الزوار من جميع أنحاء العالم».
«هذا هو المكان الذى عاش فيه صديقى. لعبنا كرة القدم فى هذا الشارع. لم تكن هناك سيارات ذلك الحين».

Grandpa looked right and left, and he crossed the road. The road had lots of trucks and cars.

"And this", he said "is where I lived." We looked at the space. There was no house. There was only grass and one big tree. "Hmm, I wonder. It was so many years ago...." Grandpa looked at the tree. Grandpa walked to the tree. He looked at the ground. Then he started digging. He pulled out an old, metal box. He had a big smile on his face.

نظر الجد يمينًا ويسارًا وعبر الطريق. كان على الطريق الكثير من الشاحنات والسيارات. قال: «وهذا هو المكان الذى عشت فيه». نظرنا إلى المكان.
لم يكن هناك منزل. لم يكن هناك سوى عشب وشجرة واحدة كبيرة. «هممم، أتعجب: لقد كان ذلك منذ سنوات عديدة ...» نظر الجد إلى الشجرة.
مشى الجد إلى الشجرة. نظر إلى الأرض. ثم بدأ فى الحفر. أخرج صندوقًا معدنيًا قديمًا. كانت لديه ابتسامة كبيرة على وجهه.

"Look!" he said. He was very excited. "We were eight years old when we buried this. Let's sit down and look inside the box."
"Yes, please," I said. "I'm very curious!"

قال: «انظر!» كان متحمسًا جدًا. كنا فى الثامنة من العمر عندما دفنا هذا. دعنا نجلس وننظر داخل الصندوق. قلت: حسنًا، من فضلك. أنا أشعر بالفضول.



Find out!

The Colossi of Memnon are two large statues that exist in Luxor. They were built around 1350 BC.

تمثالا ممنون هما تمثالان كبيران موجودان فى الأقصر. تم بناؤهما حوالى ١٣٥٠ قبل الميلاد.



Choose the correct answer: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1. Grandpa's village was very (cold – crowded – quiet – dangerous).
2. Grandpa and his friends played (tennis – handball – football – basketball) on this street.
3. Grandpa pulled out an old, metal (knife – box – bag – car).





The Past Simple Tense زمن الماضى البسيط

Usage:

The past simple tense is used for expressing an action that happened and ended in the past at a certain time.

يستخدم زمن الماضى البسيط للتعبير عن فعل حدث وانتهى فى الماضى فى وقت معين.

Affirmative Form: صيغة الإثبات:

١. يتكون الفعل فى الماضى بإضافة (d/ed /ied) للفعل وتسمى الأفعال المنتظمة (Regular verbs):

1. Regular verbs: الأفعال المنتظمة:

Subject (الفاعل) + (inf.) الفعل فى المصدر + d/ed/ied ... .

Regular Verbs
أفعال منتظمة

معظم الأفعال يُضاف لها (ed):	الأفعال المنتهية بـ (e) يُضاف لها (d):	الأفعال المنتهية بحرف ساكن + (y)، تُحذف الـ (y) ويُضاف إليها الـ (ied).	الأفعال المنتهية بحرف ساكن + يسبقه حرف متحرك، يُضاف لها (ed) مع مضاعفة الحرف الساكن.
look → looked	live → lived	bury → buried	stop → stopped





We played football on this street.

2. Irregular verbs: الأفعال غير المنتظمة:

٢. بعض الأفعال لا تقبل بالإضافات وتتغير عند استخدامها فى زمن الماضى وتسمى الأفعال غير المنتظمة "Irregular verbs":



Present		Past	Present		Past
am/ is	يكون (للمفرد)	was	are	يكون (للجمع)	were
grow	يكبر	grew	say	يقول	said
have	يملك	had	sit	يجلس	sat
feel	يشعر	felt	see	يرى	saw
find	يجد	found	know	يعرف	knew





The village was quiet in the past.

Negative Form: صيغة النفى:

Subject + didn't + (inf.) الفعل فى المصدر...

e.g.



He didn't play football yesterday.

Yes/No Question: السؤال بـ هل:

A: Did + subject + (inf.) الفعل فى المصدر...?

B: Yes,	subject	did.
B: No,		didn't.

e.g.



A: Did you jump high?
B: Yes, I did.

e.g.



A: Did he play football on this street?
B: No, he didn't.

Wh-Question: السؤال باستخدام كلمات الاستفهام:

A: Wh- word كلمة الاستفهام	did	subject	(inf.) الفعل فى المصدر...?
B: Subject (الفاعل) + التصريف الثانى للفعل			





A: What did the children do yesterday?
B: They played football yesterday.



- عند الإجابة تحول "you" فى السؤال إلى "I" أو "We".

Key words: الكلمات الدالة:

yesterday أمس — e.g. I went to my school yesterday.

last (week, month, year, etc.) (الأسبوع أو الشهر أو العام ....) الماضى — e.g. She played tennis last week.

ago منذ — e.g. We lived here many years ago.

Verb to "be" in the past simple فعل «يكون» فى زمن الماضى البسيط

Affirmative Form: صيغة الإثبات:

He / She / It + was ... .

e.g. Grandpa was very excited.

I / We / They / You + were ... .

e.g. There were no cars then.

Negative Form: صيغة النفى:

He / She / It + was not (wasn't) ... .

e.g. Mom wasn't at home in the morning.

I/ We/ They/ You + were not (weren't) ... .

e.g. We weren't happy at the party.

Check

Choose the correct answer: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1 The village (were – are – was – is) very quiet in the past.
2 Grandpa (lived – lives – live – living) here so many years ago.
3 They (play – played – playing – plays) football in the street last Friday.
4 I (don't – doesn't – didn't – isn't) go to school yesterday.
5 (Did – Do – Does – Weren't) he do his homework last night?
6 There (are – do – were – was) no cars or trucks when we were young.
7 There (were – are – was – is) lots of visitors now.



Lesson 2



• Remembering • Understanding • Applying • Analyzing • Evaluating • Creating

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

(للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)

1 I visited my .... last week.
a) cousin b) grandpa c) friend d) uncle

2 He lives in a small ....
a) city b) desert c) school d) village

3 He has an old .... box.
a) plastic b) metal c) gold d) wooden

4 He has a lot of .... in the box.
a) photos b) money c) food d) gold

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1 He .... the secret message in the ground.
a) dug b) buried c) crossed d) lived

2 I was very .... when I won the game.
a) bad b) excited c) sad d) hungry

3 She wants to know everything. She is very ....
a) curious b) old c) near d) big

4 The song .... him of his happy memories with his friends.
a) sang b) wondered c) reminded d) crossed

5 The dog was .... a hole in the garden.
a) digging b) crossing c) starting d) growing

6 The silver spoon is made of ....
a) glass b) stone d) metal d) paper

7 Anas is very happy, he has a big .... on his face. القاهرة - السرج 2024
a) smile b) frown c) line d) mark

8 The road has lots of .... and cars. المنوفية - إدارة شبين 2024
a) animals b) years c) secrets d) trucks

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص باستخدام الكلمات المساعدة:

tree – farms – road – quiet – cars

الجيزة - 2024

My grandpa lives in a village. Grandpa's village was ....(1)............... . Now, there are a lot of ....(2)............... . There were no ....(3)............... in the past. Now, there are a lot of trucks and cars on the ....(4)............... .

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة:

I went to visit Grandpa. He lives in a village. Grandpa's village was quiet in the past. Now, there are a lot of visitors from all around the world. There were no cars in the past. Now, there are a lot of trucks and cars. There were no houses. There was only grass and one big tree. Grandpa played with his friends when he was young. Now, Grandpa is very old.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 The general idea of the text is about my Grandpa's ....

a) friends b) city c) family d) village

2 There weren't any .... in my Grandpa's village in the past.

a) people b) trees c) cars d) animals

B Answer the following questions:

3 When did Grandpa play with his friends?

....

4 Summarize the text in one sentence.

....

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمات بين الأقواس:

1 I lived in Aswan when I .... (am) six years old. القليوبية - إدارة بنها

2 We .... (play) football yesterday. الجيزة – إدارة البدرشين

3 Ahmed .... (visit) his uncle last week. الفيوم – إدارة إطسا

4 A: Did you ride a bike yesterday? B: No, I .... (don't). القليوبية – طوخ 2024

5 What did you .... (bought) yesterday? الجيزة

6 Where did Aya .... (went) last year? القاهرة - الأزهر الشريف

7 They didn't .... (went) to their school. الجيزة - إدارة الوراق

8 Where did Mona .... (lived)? الجيزة - إدارة منشأة القناطر

9 Last week, she .... (is) at the park. القاهرة - إدارة حدائق القبة

10 I .... (don't) bake a cake yesterday. القاهرة – إدارة حدائق القبة

11 Grandpa .... (were) eight years old when he buried his box.

12 Now, Grandpa .... (be) very old.

13 A: .... (Was) you tired this morning? B: Yes, I was.

14 Ahmed .... (visit) his uncle last week. الفيوم – إطسا 2024

15 What subject .... (do) you study yesterday? الإسماعيلية – 2024



Lesson 3





A short story



1. Listen and say:

استمع وقل:



Main vocabulary

hole	حفرة	pleased (adj.)	مسرور	delighted (adj.)	مبتهج / سعيد
excited (adj.)	متحمس	mice	فئران	moral	الدرس الأخلاق (العبرة)

Extra vocabulary

the country	الريف	seeds	بذور	pretty (adj.)	جميل
bright (adj.)	لامع	lights	أضواء	reason	سبب
smoke	دخان	noise	ضوضاء	incredibly	بشكل لا يصدق
loud (adj.)	صاخب	scared (adj.)	خائف	sounds	أصوات
smells	روائح	suddenly	فجأة	voice	صوت (بشرى)
bread	خبز	exciting (adj.)	شيق / مثير	life	حياة

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعــال منتظمــة

Present		Past	Present		Past
visit	يزور	visited	stop	يتوقف/ يوقف	stopped
wait	ينتظر	waited	rain	تمطر	rained
cover	يغطى	covered	prepare	يعد/ يجهز	prepared

Irregular verbs أفعــال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
give	يعطى	gave	come	يأتى	came
catch	يمسك/ يلحق	caught	run	يجرى	ran

Expressions and Phrases

full of	ملىء بـ	Why don't you ....?	لِمَ لا ....؟ (للاقتراح)
catch a train	يلحق بقطار	just as	فى نفس الوقت
(be) prepared for	مستعدًا لـ	around the corner	حـول ناصية الطريق
go back to	يعـود إلى	run away	يهرب

Let's say it right!

- لاحظ أن حرف الـ (gh) حرفان لا ينطقان (silent) كما فى كلمات (bright)/ (lights)/ (delighted)/ (eight).
- لاحظ أن حرف الـ (s) قد ينطق /z/ (ز) كما فى (reason)/ (noise)/ (was)/ (visit).



City Mouse and Country Mouse فأر المدينة وفأر الريف

2. Look and read: انظر واقرأ:



The beginning

1 The city mouse visited the country mouse in his hole in the ground. The country mouse was pleased. He gave his friend grass and seeds.

زار فأر المدينة فأر الريف فى حفرته فى الأرض. كان فأر الريف مسرورًا. أعطى صديقه العشب والبذور.

The middle

2 The city mouse said, "Thank you. You know, the city is pretty and full of bright lights, why don't you come and see?"
The country mouse was delighted and very excited.
The city mouse stopped eating and said, "There's no reason to wait. We can catch a train at eight."
The two friends ran to the train, just as it started to rain.
In the city, the smoke from the cars covered the stars and the noise was incredibly loud. The country mouse was scared.
He wasn't prepared for so many new sounds and smells.
Suddenly, a cat's voice said, "Hmm, two mice and some bread."

قال فأر المدينة: «شكرًا لك. هل تعلم أن المدينة جميلة ومليئة بالأضواء الساطعة، فلماذا لا تأتى وترى؟» كان فأر الريف مبتهجًا ومتحمسًا للغاية. توقف فأر المدينة عن الأكل وقال: «لا يوجد سبب للانتظار. يمكننا اللحاق بقطار فى الثامنة». جرى الصديقان إلى القطار عندما بدأ المطر يهطل. فى المدينة، غطى دخان السيارات النجوم وكانت الضوضاء عالية (صاخبة) بشكل لا يصدق. كان فأر الريف خائفًا. لم يكن مستعدًّا للعديد من الأصوات والروائح الجديدة. وفجأة قال قط: «هممم، فأران وبعض الخبز».

The end

3 "Run, run, run" said the city mouse. They ran around the corner. The country mouse said, "Thank you my friend, the city is exciting, but it's time for me to go back to the country and back to where life is good for me."

قال فأر المدينة: «اجرى، اجرى، اجرى». ركضا حول ناصية الطريق. قال فأر الريف، «شكرًا لك يا صديقى، المدينة رائعة، ولكن حان الوقت للعودة إلى الريف والعودة إلى حيث تكون الحياة جيدة بالنسبة لى».

Check

Choose the correct answer: اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1 Mice live in (walls - halls - holes - doors) in the ground.
2 The city is full of bright (lights - seeds - grass - trees).





(١) تـتغير بعض الكلمات تمامًا فى صيغة الجمع ولا تتبع القواعد.

e.g.

Singular			Plural		
	a mouse	فأر		mice	فئران
	a man	رجل		men	رجال

(٢) تنتهى بعض الصفات بـ (ing) والبعض الآخر ينتهى بـ (ed):

(ing) adjectives	(ed) adjectives
لوصف الشيء / الشخص الذى يسبب الشعور.	لوصف المشاعر، لإخبارنا كيف يشعر الناس.
e.g. - The city is **exciting**. - المدينة رائعة. - The football player was **amazing**. - لاعب كرة القدم كان مذهلاً.	e.g. The city mouse was very **excited**. فأر المدينة كان متحمسًا جدًا.

What do you like about the country/city and what don't you like?

ما الذى يعجبك فى (البلد/المدينة) وما الذى لا يعجبك؟

	Pros الإيجابيات	Cons السلبيات
In the country:	There are few sounds and smells. هناك أصوات وروائح قليلة.	Life is slow and too quiet. الحياة بطيئة وهادئة للغاية.
In the city:	It is pretty and full of bright lights. إنها جميلة ومليئة بالأضواء الساطعة.	The smoke from the cars covers the stars and the noise is incredibly loud. يغطى دخان السيارات النجوم والضوضاء عالية بشكل لا يصدق.

Tip! A **moral** is a **value** you learn from a story you read or from a situation in life.
الـدرس الأخلاقـى (العبـرة) هـى القيمـة التـى تتعلمهـا مـن قصـة تقرؤهـا أو مـن موقـف فـى الحيـاة.

e.g. The story has a moral. It says that different people like different things.
القصة لها درس أخلاقى (عبرة). تقول إن الأشخاص المختلفين يحبون أشياء مختلفة.



Long Vowels الحروف المتحركة الطويلة

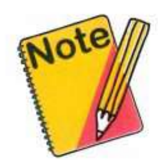


3. Listen, point, and say: استمع، أشر وقل:



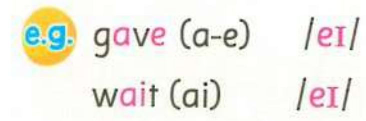
Long vowels:

/eɪ/	/ɪː/	/aɪ/	/əʊ/
gave أعطى	see يرى	my ملكي	no لا
eight ثمانية	pleased مسرور	bright لامع	hole حفرة
wait ينتظر	seeds بذور	lights أضواء	know يعرف
train قطار	eating يأكل	why لماذا	go يذهب
rain مطر	me أنا	delighted مبتهج	slow بطيء
		excited متحمس	smoke دخان
		life حياة	
		mice فئران	



We use different letter combinations to pronounce the same sound.

نستخدم حروفًا مدمجة مختلفة لنطق نفس الصوت.



wait (ai) /eɪ/





4. Look, read, and notice:

انظر، اقرأ ولاحظ:

Numerator → $\frac{1}{2}$ ← Denominator

(البسط) (المقام)

bigger than أكبر من → $>$ ←	smaller than أصغر من	the same as يساوي $=$

e.g.

$\frac{1}{2}$ $>$ $\frac{1}{3}$

$\frac{1}{2}$ is bigger than $\frac{1}{3}$

$\frac{1}{4}$ $<$ $\frac{1}{3}$

$\frac{1}{4}$ is smaller than $\frac{1}{3}$

$\frac{4}{8}$ $=$ $\frac{3}{6}$

$\frac{4}{8}$ is the same as $\frac{3}{6}$

Tip! We can make a fraction simpler by dividing a numerator and denominator by the same number.

يمكننا تبسيط الكسر عن طريق قسمة البسط والمقام على نفس الرقم.

e.g. $\frac{10}{40} = \frac{10 \div 10}{40 \div 10} = \frac{1}{4}$



Lesson 3



• Remembering • Understanding • Applying • Analyzing • Evaluating • Creating

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

(للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)

1 The city mouse visited the country mouse ....
a) tomorrow b) yesterday c) last week d) last month

2 The country mouse was .... and excited.
a) scared b) sad c) angry d) pleased

3 The two mice took the .... to the city.
a) bus b) train c) car d) bike

4 The life in the city isn't .... for the country mouse.
a) good b) excited c) bad d) delighted

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1 The mouse was in his .... in the ground. الجيزة – توجيه اللغة الإنجليزية 2024
a) hole b) seed c) train d) book

2 I was too late, so I couldn't .... the bus.
a) eat b) put c) catch d) read

3 I was .... to read the new story. It was funny. الشرقية – إدارة فاقوس 2024
a) scared b) pleased c) angry d) sad

4 I got up suddenly when I heard some .... sounds.
a) loud b) noise c) moral d) pleased

5 The city is full of bright .... الشرقية – إدارة منيا القمح 2024
a) grass b) plants c) lights d) animals

6 Mice are always .... of cats.
b) happy b) scared c) pleased d) excited

7 The city is very busy and .... أسيوط – إدارة ديروط 2024
a) quiet b) calm c) noisy d) free

8 Farmers live in a .... البحر الأحمر – الغردقة 2024
a) village b) town c) city d) street

9 "Delighted" is the opposite of "..........................".
a) sad b) noisy c) big d) pleased

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص باستخدام الكلمات المساعدة:

القاهرة – إدارة القاهرة الجديدة 2024

grass – mouse – hole – catch – train

The city mouse visited the country mouse in his ....(1).......... in the ground. The country ....(2).......... was pleased. He gave his friend ....(3).......... and seeds. The city mouse said, "Thank you". The city mouse stopped eating and ran to ....(4).......... a train at eight.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة:

القليوبية-القناطر 2024

The city mouse visited the country mouse in his hole in the ground. The country mouse was pleased. He gave his friend grass and seeds. The two friends ran to the train to go to the city. In the city, the smoke from the cars covers the stars and the noise was loud. The country mouse was scared. He wasn't prepared for so many new sounds and smells. The country mouse said, "Thank you my friend, the city is exciting, but it's time for me to go back to the country and back to where life is good for me."

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 This general idea of the text is about .... in the city and the country.
a) life b) farming c) sports d) work

2 The underlined word "pleased" means very ....
a) sad b) happy c) busy d) worried

B Answer the following questions:

3 Where did the city mouse visit the country mouse?

....

4 What did the country mouse give to the city mouse?

....

5 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى:

القاهرة - إدارة مدينة نصر 2024

1 where did the country mouse live

....

2 the country mouse gave his friend grass

....

6 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements: اكتب فقرة من (18) كلمة باستخدام العناصر التالية:

أسيوط - إدارة ديروط 2024

مجاب عنه صفحة 254

"Life in the country"

quiet – trees – trucks

....
....
....
....



Lessons 4 & 5
Writing & Project





1. Listen and say: استمع وقل:



Main vocabulary

nervous (adj.)	عصبى/ متوتر	backpack	حقيبة الظهر	gate	بوابة
neighborhood	حى سكنى	town	مدينة صغيرة	neighbors	جيران
gas car	سيارات تعمل بالوقود	electricity	الكهرباء	shopping mall	مول تجارى

Extra vocabulary

first day	اليوم الأول	toys	ألعاب	gray	رمادى
pants	بنطلون	classroom	فصل دراسى	kind	طيب/ عطوف
math	رياضيات	fun (adj.)	ممتع	new (adj.)	جديد
history	تاريخ	project	مشروع	photos	صور
noisy (adj.)	مزعج	shopping area	منطقة تسوق	shoe store	متجر أحذية
modern (adj.)	حديث	research	بحث	buildings	مبانٍ

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعــال منتظمــة

Present		Past	Present		Past
remember	يتذكر	remembered	stay	يبقى	stayed
carry	يحمل	carried	walk	يمشى	walked
cry	يبكى	cried	study	يدرس	studied

Irregular verbs أفعــال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
put on	يرتدى	put on	sit	يجلس	sat
learn	يتعلم	learned/ learnt	drive	يقود	drove
wear	يرتدى	wore	speak	يتحدث	spoke

Expressions and Phrases

start school	يبدأ العام الدراسى	say goodbye	يودع
(be) called	يُسمى/ يُدعى	then and now	فى الماضى والحاضر
do project	يقوم بمشروع	find out	يكتشف
as much as possible	بقدر المستطاع	much cleaner and quieter	أكثر هدوءًا ونظافة
on Saturdays	فى أيام السبت	do research	يقوم ببحث

Important sentences جمل هامة

* Younis remembered his first day of school.
* He wanted to play with his toys, he didn't want to go to school.
* He sat next to a boy called Marwan.
* They studied math and played games; it was fun!
* The next day, he wasn't nervous. He was excited.

* تذكر يونس يومه الأول فى المدرسة.
* أراد اللعب بألعابه، ولم يكن يريد الذهاب إلى المدرسة.
* جلس بجانب ولد اسمه مروان.
* درسا الرياضيات ولعبا الألعاب؛ كان الأمر ممتعًا!
* فى اليوم التالى، لم يكن متوترًا. كان متحمسًا.



Writing



2. Look and read:

انظر واقرأ:

My first day of school



by Younis



I remember my first day of school. I was six years old, and I lived in Aswan.

I was very nervous. I liked staying at home with my family. I wanted to play with my toys, I didn't want to go to school.

أتذكر يومى الأول فى المدرسة، كنت فى السادسة من عمرى، وعشت فى أسوان.

كنت متوترًا للغاية. أحببت البقاء فى المنزل مع عائلتى. أردت أن ألعب بألعابى، لم أرغب فى الذهاب إلى المدرسة.

I put on a blue T-shirt, gray pants, and black shoes.

I carried my backpack. Mom and I walked to school.

ارتديت تيشرت أزرق، وبنطلونًا رماديًّا، وحذاءً أسود. حملت حقيبة الظهر. مشيت أنا وأمى إلى المدرسة.

At the school gate, I wanted to cry. I said goodbye and I walked into the classroom.

The teacher asked me to sit next to a boy called Marwan.

The teacher was very kind. We studied math and played games; it was fun!

عند بوابة المدرسة أردت البكاء. قلت وداعًا ومشيت إلى داخل الفصل. طلبت منى المعلمة أن أجلس بجانب ولد يسمى (يدعى) مروان. كانت المعلمة لطيفة جدًّا. درسنا الرياضيات ولعبنا الألعاب؛ كان الأمر ممتعًا!

The next day, I wasn't nervous. I was excited. I wanted to see my new friend, Marwan. I wanted to learn math and I wanted to go to school.

فى اليوم التالى، لم أكن متوترًا. كنت متحمسًا. أردت أن أرى صديقى الجديد مروان. كنت أرغب فى تعلم الرياضيات وأردت الذهاب إلى المدرسة.

Tip! When we write notes, we use key words. We do not write sentences.
We can use our notes to plan writing.
عندما نكتب ملاحظات، نستخدم الكلمات الرئيسية. نحن لا نكتب الجمل. يمكننا استخدام ملاحظاتنا للتخطيط للكتابة.

How to write about your first day at school. كيفية الكتابة عن يومك الأول فى المدرسة:

How did you feel
بِمَ شعرت؟

What did you wear?
ماذا ارتديت؟

Describe the teacher. Was he/she kind?
صف المعلم. هل كان طيبًا؟

Did you like your first day?
هل أحببت يومك الأول فى المدرسة؟

Did you want to go back to school the next day?
هل كنت ترغب فى العودة إلى المدرسة فى اليوم التالى؟

What did you wear?

How did you feel?

I remember my first day of school. I was six years old. I was very nervous. I didn't want to go to school. I put on a red T-shirt, black pants, and white shoes. I carried my backpack. My sister and I walked to school. The teacher was very kind. We studied math and played games there. I liked my first day at school. I wanted to go back to school the next day to see my friend.

Did you want to go back to school the next day?

Did you like your first day?

Describe the teacher. Was he/she kind?



My town then and now

We are doing a history project in school about our town. We looked at old photos.

We spoke to our older neighbors to find out as much as possible.

نقوم بعمل بحث تاريخى فى المدرسة عن مدينتنا. نظرنا إلى الصور القديمة. تحدثنا إلى جيراننا القدامى لنكتشف المدينة قدر الإمكان.



Grandma says that her mom and dad drove cars like this. All the cars were gas cars. They were very noisy.

تقول الجدة إن أمها وأباها كانا يقودان سيارات كهذه. كانت جميع السيارات تسير بالوقود. كانت تسبب فى الكثير من الضوضاء.



Now we have a car that uses electricity and gas; it's much cleaner and quieter.

الآن لدينا سيارة تسير بالكهرباء والوقود. إنها أقل تلويثًا وأكثر هدوءًا.



Our town had a shopping area, but it was very old. Dad worked in a shoe store on Saturdays.

كانت مدينتنا بها منطقة تسوق، لكنها كانت قديمة جدًّا. كان أبى يعمل فى متجر أحذية أيام السبت.



Today we have a big modern shopping mall, but I don't like shopping! I want to play football.

اليوم لدينا مركز تسوق حديث وكبير، لكنى لا أحب التسوق! أريد أن ألعب كرة القدم.

Check

1 Why does Seleem like modern cars? SB

....

2 How was the shopping area in Seleem's town in the past?

....



Lessons 4 & 5



• Remembering • Understanding • Applying • Analyzing • Evaluating • Creating

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1 My dad bought a new electric car last week. It's ....
a) old b) tall c) slow d) modern

2 We are .... a history project about Cairo.
a) doing b) making c) thinking d) walking

3 I see my friends every day because we live in the same ....
a) class b) neighborhood c) store d) school

4 I have an exam tomorrow. I'm very ....
a) noisy b) tall c) nervous d) clean

5 I .... a blue T-shirt and gray pants for school.
a) carry b) find c) put on d) look

6 We .... math.
a) played b) studied c) helped d) walked

7 I carry my .... to school. بنى سويف _ أدارة الواسطى 2024
a) couch b) backpack c) bed d) desk

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص باستخدام الكلمات المساعدة:

played – nervous – six – toys – school

بنى سويف _ إدارة ببا 2024

I remember my first day of school. I was ....(1)............ years old, and I lived in Aswan. I was very ....(2)............ . I liked staying at home with my family, I wanted to play with my ....(3)............ I didn't want to go to ....(4)............ . After I knew my teachers and classmates, I loved the school.

3 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة:

My name is Ali. I'm doing a history project in school with my friends about our town. We looked at old photos. We spoke to our older neighbors to find out as much as possible. Grandma says that her mom and dad drove gas cars. They were very noisy. Now we have a car that uses electricity and gas; it's much cleaner and quieter. Our town had a shopping area, but it was very old. Dad worked in a shoe store on Saturdays.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 The general idea of the text is about Ali's .... then and now.

a) family b) town c) photo d) friends

2 Ali is doing a/an .... project.

a) science b) math c) English d) history

B Answer the following questions:

3 How were the gas cars in the past?

....

4 Where did Ali's father work?

....

4 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى:

dad worked in a shoe store on saturdays.

....

5 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements: اكتب فقرة من (18) كلمة باستخدام العناصر الآتية:

"My first day of school"

مجاب عنه صفحة 254

القاهرة - إدارة شرق مدينة نصر 2024

nervous – teacher – backpack

....

....

....

....

Unit 7 REVIEW



يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من مراجعة أهم الأجزاء التى وردت بالوحدة.

Lesson (1)

city	مدينة كبيرة	quiz	اختبار
building	مبنى	interesting	شيق
river	نهر	the widest	الأوسع
forest	غابة	center	مركز
desert	صحراء	the longest	الأطول
village	قرية	crocodile	تمساح
oasis	واحة	branch	فرع
mountain	جبل	reptiles	زواحف

Lesson (2)

memories	ذكريات	inside	داخل
trucks	شاحنات	village	قرية
curious	فضولى	easy	سهل
excited	متحمس	games	ألعاب
quiet	هادئ	subjects	مواد
visitors	زوار	pull	يسحب
ground	أرض	bury	يدفن
metal	معدنى	grow up	يكبر
smile	ابتسامة	dig	يحفر

Lesson (3)

hole	حفرة	pretty	جميل
pleased	مسرور	bright	لامع
delighted	مبتهج	reason	سبب
excited	متحمس	smoke	دخان
mice	فئران	noise	ضوضاء
moral	عبرة	loud	صاخب
the country	الريف	scared	خائف
seeds	بذور	voice	صوت

Lessons (4 & 5)

nervous	متوتر	pants	بنطلون
backpack	حقيبة ظهر	neighborhood	حى سكنى
gate	بوابة	gas car	سيارة تعمل بالوقود
neighbors	جيران	noisy	مزعج
electricity	الكهرباء	shoe store	متجر أحذية
toys	ألعاب	modern	حديث
gray	رمادى	shopping mall	مول تجارى
classroom	فصل دراسى	town	مدينة صغيرة

Language Focus

The Past Simple Tense

Affirmative Form:

1. Regular verbs:

Subject (الفاعل) + (inf.) الفعل فى المصدر + (ed/d/ied)... .

The children played football.



2. Irregular verbs:

Subject + التصريف الثانى للفعل ... .

The village was quiet in the past.





Negative Form:

Subject + didn't + (inf.) الفعل فى المصدر... .

He didn't play football yesterday.

Yes/No Question:

A: Did + subject + (inf.) الفعل فى المصدر...?

B: Yes,	subject	did.
B: No,		didn't.



A: Did you play football?
B: Yes, I did.

Wh- question:

A: Question word	did	subject	(inf.) الفعل فى المصدر...?
B: Subject (الفاعل) + التصريف الثانى للفعل			

A: How did you go to school?
B: I went by bus.







تأكد من حفظك لكلمات الدروس قبل البدء فى إجابة اختبار الوحدة.

Lesson 1

مبنى	....	اختبار	....
مدينة	....	نهر النيل	....
غابة	....	الأطول	....
نهر	....	فرع	....
قرية	....	جبل	....
صحراء	....	واحة	....

Lesson 2

ذكريات	....	أرض	....
فضولى	....	زوار	....
هادئ	....	معدنى	....
ابتسامة	....	شاحنات	....
قرية	....	يسحب	....
طريق	....	يدفن	....
عشب	....	يحفر	....

Lesson 3

فئران	....	سبب	....
مسرور	....	جميل	....
عبرة (درس أخلاقى)	....	الريف	....
صوت	....	متحمس	....
خائف	....	حفرة	....
ضوضاء	....	أضواء	....
روائح	....	صاخب	....
دخان	....	بذور	....
مبتهج	....	لامع	....

Lessons 4 & 5

متوتر	....	حديث	....
جيران	....	بنطلون	....
حقيبة ظهر	....	الكهرباء	....
رمادى	....	بوابة	....
متجر أحذية	....	ألعاب	....

WRITING TIME





لكى تتمكن من كتابة الموضوعات بشكل مميز، اتبع هذه الخطوات.

How to write about the Nile:

- The Nile is + صفة يتميز بها نهر النيل مثل أنه أطول نهر
- It is + طول نهر النيل
- It has + عدد الفروع فى مصر
- The Nile helps + اذكر كيف يساعد نهر النيل على الحياة فى مصر

"The Nile"

The Nile is the longest river in the world. It is 6,670 kilometers long. It has two branches in Egypt. The Nile helps farmers grow their plants. Many types of fish can live in the Nile.

How to write about your first day of school:

- I was + عمرك فى أول يوم دراسى
- I was + وصف مشاعرك فى أول يوم دراسى
- I put on + وصف الزى المدرسى وألوانه
- I met + اسم أول صديق قابلته
- The next day, كيف كنت فى اليوم التالى

"My first day of school"

I remember my first day of school. I was six years old. I was very nervous and didn't want to go to school. I put on a blue T-shirt and gray pants. I met a new friend called Ali. The next day, I wasn't nervous and I wanted to see my new friend.

How to write about your town in the past and now:

- My town was + حالة المدينة فى الماضى
  Now, it's + حالة المدينة الآن
- There were + عدد السيارات فى الماضى
  Now, there are + عدد السيارات الآن
- We had + اختراعات قديمة فى الماضى
  Now we have + اختراعات حديثة

"My town"

My town was very quiet in the past. Now it's busy and there are a lot of people. We had no cars in the past. Now, there are many cars and trucks. We had gas cars in the past. They were noisy. Now we have electric cars. They are much quieter.



STUDENT'S BOOK CORNER

يتضمن هذا الجزء أهم الأسئلة التى وردت بكتاب الوزارة.



1 Look and write:

building – city – desert – forest – mountain – oasis – river – village



1 ....
2 ....
3 ....
4 ....
5 ....
6 ....
7 ....
8 ....

2 Complete the sentences with (is - are - was - were):



1 Grandpa's village .... very quiet.
Now, there .... a lot of people.

2 There .... no cars in the past.
Now, there .... a lot of trucks and cars.

3 Grandpa .... eight years old when he buried the box of memories. Now, Grandpa .... very old.

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verb in brackets:

Last year, I .... (visit) my Grandpa's village. It .... (be) a quiet, but beautiful place. There .... (be) lots of trees, but there .... (not be) any trains. Grandpa's parents .... (move) to this village when he .... (be) three. He .... (play) football near his home.







Listening

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة: (للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب) 4

الإسكندرية – توجيه اللغة الانجليزية 2024

1 I remember my .... day of school.
a) second b) last c) first d) third

2 I put on a .... T-shirt.
a) black b) blue c) yellow d) red

3 I carried my ....
a) book b) chair c) bottle d) backpack

4 My .... drove me to school.
a) brother b) mother c) father d) grandma

Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة: 2

1 The Nile is the .... river in the world. الفيوم – إدارة غرب الفيوم 2024
a) shortest b) longest c) tallest d) widest

2 There are a lot of trees in the .... الجيزة – إدارة شمال الجيزة 2024
a) mountain b) sea c) desert d) forest

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص باستخدام الكلمات المساعدة: 2

worked – modern – don't – Saturdays – doesn't

Our town had a shopping area, but it was very old. Dad ....(1).............. in a shoe store on ....(2).............. . Today, we have a big ....(3).............. shopping mall, but I ....(4).............. like shopping! I want to play football.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة: 5

Our grandpa lived in a village many years ago. He loved his village very much. Our grandpa's village was very quiet. He liked green plants. Our grandpa visited our city last year. He was excited to visit the city. When he walked into our city, he was sad to see a lot of cars and trucks in the city. The city is very noisy. He wanted to come back to his village. He didn't like the city.

الشرقية – إدارة غرب الزقازيق 2024

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 Our grandpa lived in a .... many years ago.

a) city b) town c) park d) village

2 The city is very ....

a) quiet b) noisy c) happy d) calm

B Answer the following questions:

3 How was Grandpa's village?

....

4 When did Grandpa visit the city?

....

Writing

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمات بين الأقواس:

8

1 He .... (have) a party last week. القاهرة – إدارة السلام 2024

2 Did you .... (ate) healthy food? الشرقية – إدارة الإبراهيمية 2024

3 She .... (doesn't) buy a new dress last week. الشرقية – غرب الزقازيق 2024

4 Mona didn't .... (went) to school yesterday. الجيزة – العمرانية 2024

6 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

2

akram pulled out an old, metal box إدارة الفيوم 2024

....

7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة من (18) كلمة مستخدمًا العناصر الآتية:

7

الشرقية – إدارة أبو حماد 2024

مجاب عنه صفحة 254

"My town"

noisy – shopping mall – modern

....

....

....

....

Assess your progress

< 50%	50 : 64%	65 : 84%	85 : 100%
Study again	Practice more	Solve more exams	Well done!

Unit 7 AL-AZHAR CORNER

تحتوى هذه الصفحة على أسئلة خاصة بمواصفات الأزهر.

1 Listen and choose the correct answer:

استمع واختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

(للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)

1 Grandpa's village was very ....
(polluted – noisy – quiet)

2 There were no .... in the past.
(cars – people – children)

3 Now, there are a lot of .... and cars.
(tablets – trucks – televisions)

2 Read and complete the dialogue:

اقرأ وأكمل المحادثة:

kilometers – longest – River – long

Sara : What do you know about the ....(1)........ Nile?
Hana : It's the ....(2)........ river in the world.
Sara : How ....(3)........ is it?
Hana : It's 6,670 ....(4)........ .

3 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة:

Last week, Samy visited his grandpa in Tanta where he lives. He took the train there. When he arrived, Grandpa met him at the train station. Samy's grandpa was very happy and excited. He showed Samy around the city. Grandpa told Samy that Tanta was very quiet when he was young. There weren't many cars or shops. Now, life is different. There are many cars on the roads. There are many shops and big shopping malls, too.

A Answer the following questions:

1 Where did Grandpa meet Samy? ....

2 How is life in Tanta now? ....

B Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

3 Samy's Grandpa lives in ....
a) Cairo b) Giza c) Tanta d) Alexandria

4 Samy took the .... to Tanta.
a) car b) taxi c) train d) bus

5 Samy's Grandpa was very ....
a) sad b) happy c) tired d) nervous

Unit 8

We had fun
قضينا وقتًا ممتعًا



Unit Objectives

- **By the end of this unit, the student will be able to:**
  - find out how to use quantifiers.
  - practice using past simple irregular verbs.
  - discuss and write about festivals.
  - read about Egyptian festivals and celebrations.
  - talk about special family days.
  - practice fractions and decimals.
  - write about a special day.

- **بنهاية هذه الوحدة، سيكون التلميذ قادرًا على أن:**
  - يكتشف كيفية استخدام محددات الكميات.
  - يتدرب على استخدام زمن الماضي البسيط مع الأفعال غير المنتظمة.
  - يتناقش ويكتب عن الاحتفالات.
  - يقرأ عن المهرجانات المصرية والاحتفالات.
  - يتحدث عن المناسبات العائلية الخاصة.
  - يتدرب على الكسور والأعداد العشرية.
  - يكتب عن يوم مميز.

Did you know?

- In Morocco, Algeria, and Tunisia, there is a famous dish called Couscous. It is * semolina with meat and/or vegetables. It can also be eaten with sugar or as a * dessert.

Find out!

- People eat different foods to * celebrate * festivals. Biriyani is a popular rice dish from South Asia. Maqluba is popular in Middle Eastern countries and * consists of fried vegetables, meat, and rice cooked together in a pot which is then * flipped upside down.

* semolina	دقيق السميد	* dessert	تحلية	* celebrate	يحتفل
* festival	احتفال	* consist of	يتكون من	* flipped upside down	انقلبت رأسًا على عقب



Lesson 1

Food and Drinks

أطعمة ومشروبات





1. Listen, point, and say:





Main vocabulary

Quantifiers:

محددات الكمية:

a packet of عبوة من



a packet of cookies
عبوة من البسكويت (الكوكيز)



a packet of candies
عبوة من الحلوى

a bar of قالب من



a bar of chocolate
قالب من الشوكولاتة



a bar of soap
قالب من الصابون

a carton of علبة من



a carton of juice
علبة من العصير



a carton of milk
علبة من اللبن

a bottle of زجاجة من



a bottle of water
زجاجة من المياه



a bottle of milk
زجاجة من اللبن



a bottle of lemonade
زجاجة من عصير الليمون

a slice of شريحة من



a slice of cake
شريحة من الكيك



a slice of pizza
شريحة من البيتزا



a slice of meat
شريحة من اللحم

a piece of قطعة من



a piece of cheese
قطعة من الجبن



a piece of bread
قطعة من الخبز



- لاحظ أن حرفى الـ (ck) ينطقان /k/ (ك) كما فى (packet).
- لاحظ أن حرف الـ (c) ينطق /s/ (س) إذا أتى بعده (e - i - y) كما فى (piece)/ (slice)/ (juice) .

Extra vocabulary

party	حفلة	well	حسنًا / بخير	only	فقط
maybe	ربما	horrible (adj.)	فظيع	thirsty (adj.)	عطشان
all	كل	food	طعام	cola	كولا

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Irregular verbs أفعــال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
feel	يشعر	felt	eat	يأكل	ate
have	يملك/ يتناول	had	drink	يشرب	drank

Expressions and Phrases

What happened ...?	ماذا حدث ...؟	have fun	يستمتع
look a bit green	يبدو مريضًا	What's the matter?	ما الأمر؟
Oh, dear.	يا عزيزى. (للتعاطف)	feel well	يشعر بحالة جيدة
Anything else?	أى شىء آخر؟	too much	كثير جدًّا
That's horrible!	هذا فظيع!	Is that all?	هل هذا كل شىء؟
Oh, no!	أوه، لا! (للتعجب)	That's why ...	لهذا ...

Important sentences جمل هامة

* Reem had fun at the party. استمتعت ريم بالحفل.
* She looked a bit green. بدت مريضة قليلاً.
* She had a slice of cake, a bar of chocolate, a piece of cheese, and a packet of cookies.
تناولت قطعة من الكعكة، وقطعة من الشوكولاتة، وقطعة من الجبن وعبوة من البسكويت.
* She drank a carton of juice and a bottle of water. شربت علبة عصير وزجاجة ماء.

Check

Choose the correct answer:

1 I bought a carton of (meat – milk – cookies – candies) for my mom.

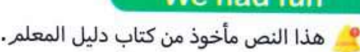
2 I bought a bottle of water because I was (hungry – cold – thirsty – well).

3 Nadia bought three (bars – bottles – slices – cartons) of soap yesterday.

4 It's unhealthy to eat too many (bottles – packets – slices – cartons) of cake.

5 I had two pieces of (juice – lemonade – bread – milk) with beans for breakfast.

6 Yesterday was my birthday (school – party – bottle – pizza).



هذا النص مأخوذ من كتاب دليل المعلم.

Listening script page 20 





2. Listen, read, and role-play: استمع، اقرأ وتبادل الأدوار:

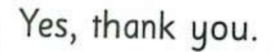


Did you have fun at the party, Reem?
هل استمتعتِ بالحفلة يا ريم؟





Yes, thank you.
نعم، شكرًا لك.



What's the matter? You look a bit green.
ما الأمر؟ تبدين مريضة قليلًا.



Hmm, I don't feel well.
ممم، لا أشعر أنني بحالة جيدة.

Oh, dear. Did you eat too much?
يا عزيزتي. هل أكلتِ كثيرًا؟



I only had a slice of cake.
لقد تناولت فقط شريحة من الكعكة.



Anything else?
هل من شيء آخر؟



No.... I drank some juice.
لا... شربت بعض العصير.



Some juice?
بعض العصير؟



Well, a carton of juice.
حسنًا، علبة من العصير.



Is that all?
هل هذا كل شيء؟



Maybe a bar of chocolate, only a small one... and a piece of cheese.
ربما قالب من الشوكولاتة ، واحد فقط صغير... وقطعة من الجبن.



Cheese and chocolate? That's horrible!
الجبن والشوكولاتة؟ هذا فظيع!





That's why I ate some cookies.
لهذا أكلت بعض البسكويت.



How many cookies did you eat?
كم عدد رقائق البسكويت التى أكلتها؟



A ... packet ... of cookies.
عبوة ... من البسكويت.





Oh, no!
أوه لا!



I was thirsty after all that food, so I had a bottle of water.
كنت عطشانة بعد كل ذلك الطعام ، لذلك تناولت زجاجة من المياه.



Take care!

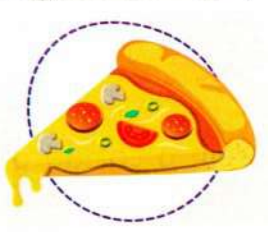
بعض الكلمات قد تأتى فعلًا (verb) أو اسمًا (noun):



e.g. slice (v.) يقطع



slice (n.) شريحة





Lesson 1



• Remembering • Understanding • Applying • Analyzing • Evaluating • Creating

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

(للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)

1 Yesterday was too .... إدارة القرين التعليمية – الشرقية 2024
a) cold b) hot c) rainy d) cloudy

2 I drank .... bottles of water.
a) five b) three c) two d) four

3 My sister drank a bottle of ....
a) lemonade b) cola c) chocolate d) butter

4 I used a .... of soap to wash my face and hands.
a) slice b) bar c) bottle d) packet

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 I want to buy a .... of chocolate. الإسكندرية – إدارة المنتزه ثان التعليمية 2024
a) bag b) bar c) bottle d) slice

2 She is eating a piece of .... بورسعيد – توجيه اللغة الإنجليزية 2024
a) water b) soap c) juice d) cheese

3 Hend bought a .... of cookies yesterday. القاهرة – إدارة السلام 2024
a) packet b) bar c) slice d) bottle

4 She looks a bit .... She is tired. القاهرة – إدارة الزيتون 2024
a) brown b) yellow c) blue d) green

5 I drank a .... of juice. الجيزة – إدارة الهرم 2024
a) packet b) bar c) slice d) carton

6 Adel drank a .... of water. الجيزة – البدرشين 2024
a) bottle b) bar c) piece d) slice

7 I was very ...., so I drank a glass of water. الإسماعيلية 2024
a) hungry b) angry c) thirsty d) sad

8 We are eating .... of pizza. الجيزة 2024
a) bottles b) bars c) cups d) slices

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

cheese – packet – bottles – slices – soap

محافظة القاهرة – منطقة إدارة هليوبوليس التعليمية 2024

My friends went to the supermarket yesterday at night. They bought many things. Nada bought two ....(1).......... of milk. Mona bought two bars of ....(2).........., three pieces of ....(3).......... and a ....(4).......... of cookies.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

محافظة المنوفية – إدارة شبين الكوم 2024

Marwa went to her friend's birthday party yesterday. She had fun at the party. There was a big table with many types of foods on it. Marwa was hungry. She ate two slices of cake and drank a carton of mango juice. The cookies looked delicious, and Marwa wanted to try them. She ate a packet of cookies and drank a bottle of water because she felt thirsty. On her way home, Marwa didn't feel well. She looked a bit green.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 Marwa went to a .... yesterday.

a) park b) club c) birthday party d) class

2 The underlined expression "looked a bit green" means ....

a) excited b) happy c) sick d) fun

B Answer the following questions:

3 What did Marwa eat at the birthday party?

....

4 Summarize the text in one sentence.

....

5 Punctuate the following:

he had a bottle of water

دمياط – إدارة فارسكور 2024

....

6 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements:

مجاب عنه صفحة 254

"Food and drinks"

packet – bottle – piece

....

....

....

....



Lesson 2





A poem قصيدة شعر



1. Listen and say: استمع وقل:



Main vocabulary

poem	قصيدة شعر	beach	شاطئ	trip	رحلة قصيرة
octopus	أخطبوط	dish	طبق / وجبة	dessert	تحلية

Extra vocabulary

weekend	الإجازة الأسبوعية	Damietta	دمياط	deep (adj.)	عميق
lovely (adj.)	جميل	meal	وجبة	healthy (adj.)	صحى
frozen (adj.)	مجمد	yogurt	زبادى	photos	صور
soon	قريبًا	September	شهر سبتمبر	jellyfish	قنديل البحر
pizza	بيتزا	video	فيديو	song	أغنية
time	الوقت	movie	فيلم	sugar	سكر
swimming test	اختبار السباحة	tired (adj.)	مُتعب	memory	ذكرى

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعـــال منتظمـة

Present		Past	Present		Past
live	يعيش	lived	remember	يتذكر	remembered
rain	تمطر	rained	use	يستخدم	used

Expressions and Phrases

by the sea	بجانب البحر	lots of	الكثير من
make into	يحول إلى	feel happy	يشعر بالسعادة
a day to remember	يوم للذكرى / يوم لا يُنسى	early September	فى أوائل سبتمبر
instead of	بدلًا من	It was fun!	كان الأمر ممتعاً!
feel sick	يشعر بالمرض	It tasted horrible!	مذاقها سيئ للغاية!



Take care!

بعض الكلمات متشابهة فى النطق لكنها تختلف فى المعنى والهجاء.



e.g.
1. see يرى / sea بحر
2. by بواسطة / bye إلى اللقاء
3. too أيضًا / two اثنان
4. coat بالطو / caught مسك

القافية: تطابق الصوت بين نهاية الكلمات فى نهايات السطور فى القصيدة.



e.g.
1. blue أزرق / too أيضًا
2. song أغنية / long طويل

Our Trip To The Sea رحلتنا إلى البحر



2. Look, read, and notice: انظر، اقرأ ولاحظ:



Last weekend we went to Damietta to see Grandma and Grandpa, who live by the sea.
We swam in the water, which was deep and blue.
We saw lots of fish, and an octopus, too!
Grandpa caught a fish, which Grandma made into a lovely dish!
We ate the meal and had a healthy dessert,
Bananas, apples, and frozen yogurt.
We saw some old photos and sang a song,
But time was short. The day wasn't long.
We felt happy. It was a day to remember.
We will go again soon, early September!



الأسبوع الماضى ذهبنا إلى دمياط لنرى جدتنا وجدنا، اللذين يعيشان بجانب البحر. سبحنا فى المياه، التى كانت عميقة وزرقاء. رأينا الكثير من السمك و أخطبوطًا أيضًا.

اصطاد جدى سمكة، وحولتها جدتى إلى وجبة لذيذة. تناولنا الوجبة وتحلية صحية، موز، تفاح وزبادى مجمد.

رأينا صورا قديمة وغنينا أغنية، ولكن الوقت كان قصيرًا. اليوم لم يكن طويلًا. شعرنا بالسعادة. لقد كان يومًا للذكرى. سوف نذهب هناك مرة أخرى قريبًا، فى أوائل سبتمبر.

Check

1 When did the children go to Damietta?

....

2 What did their grandpa catch?

....





B Language Focus

The Past Simple Tense with Irregular Verbs
زمن الماضى البسيط مع الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Affirmative Form: صيغة الإثبات:

Subject (فاعل) + التصريف الثانى للفعل ....



I ate pizza yesterday.

Negative Form: صيغة النفى:

Subject (فاعل) + didn't + (inf.) الفعل فى المصدر ... .



I didn't have fish yesterday.

Yes/No Question: السؤال بـ هل:

A: Did + subject + (inf.) الفعل فى المصدر...?

B: Yes,	subject	did.
B: No,		didn't.



e.g. 1 A: Did you have fun?
B: Yes, I did.



e.g. 2 A: Did they have fish for lunch?
B: No, they didn't.

Wh-Question: السؤال باستخدام كلمات الاستفهام:

A: Wh-word كلمة الاستفهام	did	subject	(inf.) الفعل فى المصدر...?
B: Subject (الفاعل) + التصريف الثانى للفعل			

e.g. A: What did you do last weekend? B: I swam in the sea.

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Irregular verbs أفعـــال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
see	يرى	saw	go	يذهب	went
swim	يعوم	swam	forget	ينسى	forgot
eat	يأكل	ate	cut	يقطع	cut
sing	يغنى	sang	come	يأتى	came
catch	يمسك / يصطاد	caught	say	يقول	said
buy	يشترى	bought	run	يجرى	ran
fly	يطير	flew	have	يملك/ يتناول	had
hear	يسمع	heard	make	يصنع	made
give	يعطى	gave	am/is	يكون (للمفرد)	was
write	يكتب	wrote	are	يكون (للجمع)	were
throw	يرمى	threw	drink	يشرب	drank

Check

Choose the correct answer:

1. She (buy – buys – buying – bought) a new dress for the party yesterday.
2. They (fly – flying – flew – flies) their kites last week.
3. My friends (isn't – aren't – wasn't – weren't) at school last week.
4. We (felt – feel – feels – feeling) happy yesterday.
5. I (watch – watched – watches – watching) a great movie last night.
6. We (see – saw – seeing – sees) some old photos. They were amazing.

SB

Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1. My dad .... (catch) a fish last weekend.
2. My friends .... (give) me presents on my last birthday.
3. I .... (feel) sick last night.
4. She didn't .... (got) up early yesterday.
5. I .... (visit) my grandpa three days ago.



Lesson 2



• Remembering • Understanding • Applying • Analyzing • Evaluating • Creating

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

(للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)

1 Last weekend we went to ....
a) Cairo b) Damietta c) Giza d) Alex

2 My grandparents live by the ....
a) sea b) village c) school d) river

3 The water was deep and ....
a) red b) black c) blue d) yellow

4 We saw lots of fish, and a/an ....
a) octopus b) insect c) spider d) eagle

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 This food isn't good. It tastes ....
a) good b) delicious c) sad d) horrible

2 It's healthy to have frozen .... instead of chocolate.
a) water b) fish c) yogurt d) vegetables

3 We had fun yesterday. It's a day to ....
a) eat b) go c) remember d) forget

4 They sang a .... and felt excited.
a) fish b) song c) dish d) photo

5 Bananas and apples are .... dessert.
a) bad b) unhealthy c) healthy d) hot

6 It's not safe for children to swim here, it's very .... دمياط – إدارة الزرقا 2024
a) deep b) warm c) good d) nice

7 The .... lives in the sea.
a) elephant b) camel c) octopus d) horse

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

octopus – dessert – swam – caught – catch

القاهرة – إدارة السلام 2024

Last weekend we went to Damietta to see Grandma and Grandpa, who live by the sea. We ....(1).......... in the water, which was deep and blue. We saw lots of fish, and an ....(2).........., too! Grandpa ....(3).......... a fish, which Grandma made into a lovely dish! We ate the meal and had a healthy ....(4).........., bananas, apples, and frozen yogurt.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

القاهرة – إدارة السرج 2024

Last weekend we went to Alexandria to see Grandma and Grandpa, who live by the sea. We swam in the water, which was deep and blue. We saw a lot of fish and an octopus, too. My grandpa caught a fish, which grandma made into a lovely dish. We ate the meal and had a healthy dessert, bananas, apples, and frozen yogurt. We saw some old photos and sang a song, but time was short. The day wasn't long. We felt happy. It was a day to remember.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 The general idea of the text is about ....

a) friends b) foods c) a trip to the sea d) sports

2 The underlined word "lovely" means ....

a) delicious b) big c) bad d) sad

B Answer the following questions:

3 Where did they go last week?

....

4 What did they have for dessert?

....

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1 He .... (give) his brother a present last Friday. القاهرة – إدارة السلام 2024

2 What did Magdy .... (wore) yesterday? القليوبية – إدارة بنها 2024

3 She .... (leave) home early yesterday. القاهرة – إدارة الرايلى 2024

4 How .... (is) your town in the past? الشرقية – إدارة فاقوس 2024

5 I didn't .... (drank) a bottle of water.

6 Noha .... (don't) watch TV yesterday. القاهرة - إدارة الزيتون 2024

7 She .... (writes) a paragraph yesterday. القليوبية - إدارة طوخ 2024

8 Hager .... (gets) a nice dress last night. القاهرة - إدارة مدينة نصر 2024

9 He .... (have) a party last week. القاهرة - إدارة السلام 2024

10 My grandma .... (lives) in a village when she was young. القاهرة - إدارة السلام 2024

11 My grandmother .... (visit) us last month. القليوبية - إدارة العبور 2024

12 Nada .... (win) the race last month. القليوبية – إدارة شبين القناطر 2024

13 We visited the Egyptian Museum last week. We .... (was) happy. القاهرة- إدارة الشروق 2024

14 She .... (eats) a slice of cake yesterday.

6 Punctuate the following:

1 They live in alexandria الإسكندرية – إدارة منطقة غرب 2024

....

2 We went to damietta last week

....

7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements:

جاب عنه صفحة 254

"A trip to the sea"

القاهرة – حدائق القبة 2024

beach – caught a fish – had fun

....

....

....

....





Lesson 3
CLIL: Social Studies





1. Listen and say: استمع وقل:



Main vocabulary

festival	مهرجان/ عيد	Eid Al-Fitr	عيد الفطر	Muslim	مُسلم
Eid	العيد	sunset	غروب الشمس	Islamic month	شهر إسلامى (هجرى)
kahk	كعك	Eid Mubarak	عيد مبارك/ عيد سعيد	celebration	احتفال
mosque	مسجد	Sham El-Nessim	عيد شم النسيم	Coptic Easter	عيد الفصح القبطى

Extra vocabulary

article	مقالة	American (adj.)	أمريكى	information	معلومات
Ramadan	شهر رمضان	different (adj.)	مختلف	Shawwal	شهر شوال
delicious (adj.)	لذيذ	cookies	بسكويت (كوكيز)	nuts	مكسرات
sugar	سكر	honey	عسل	bakery	مخبز
after	بعد	salted fish	سمك مملح	colored (adj.)	ملون
oldest (adj.)	أقدم	picnic	نزهة	together	معًا

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
add	يضيف	added	happen	يحدث	happened
fast	يصوم	fasted	celebrate	يحتفل	celebrated

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
mean	يعنى / يقصد	meant	buy	يشترى	bought
teach	يُدرس	taught	spend	يقضى	spent

Expressions and Phrases

is called	يُدعى/ يُسمى	during the day	أثناء النهار	do well	يؤدى جيدًا
do better	يؤدى بشكل أفضل	a time for being happy	وقت لتكون سعيدًا	spend time	يقضى وقتًا

Important sentences جمل هامة

* Eid Al-Fitr is a Muslim festival.

عيد الفطر هو عيد إسلامى.

* Eid happens in the first day of the 10th Islamic month called Shawwal.

يصادف العيد اليوم الأول من الشهر الهجرى العاشر الذى يسمى شوال.

* Kahk are delicious cookies. People eat kahk to celebrate.

الكعك هو كعك لذيذ. يأكل الناس الكحك للاحتفال.

* Many families make kahk but you can buy them from a bakery, too.

تصنع العديد من العائلات الكحك، ولكن يمكنك شراؤه من المخبز أيضًا.

* People go to the mosque and spend time with their friends.

يذهب الناس إلى المسجد ويقضون الوقت مع أصدقائهم.



- أسماء الأيام والأشهر والأعياد هى أسماء أعلام، لذا يجب أن تبدأ بأحرف كبيرة.

e.g. Eid Al-Fitr Shawwal Ramadan

- لا يمكن ترجمة بعض الكلمات العربية إلى اللغة الإنجليزية. يتم نطقها وكتابتها بنفس طريقة نطقها باللغة العربية.

e.g. Eid Al-Fitr عيد الفطر – Ramadan شهر رمضان – Shawwal شهر شوال – kahk كحك

Eid Mubarak عيد مبارك – Sham El-Nessim شم النسيم

Find out!

People in other countries mainly celebrate Eid Al-Fitr by spending time exchanging gifts and visiting friends and family. Eating sweets is also a common way of celebrating Eid Al-Fitr.

يحتفل الناس فى البلدان الأخرى بعيد الفطر بشكل أساسى من خلال قضاء الوقت فى تبادل الهدايا وزيارة الأصدقاء والعائلة. تناول الحلويات أيضًا طريقة شائعة للاحتفال بعيد الفطر.





2. Look and read:

انظر واقرأ:

Eid Al-Fitr in Egypt

عيد الفطر فى مصر



Eid Al-Fitr is a Muslim festival. The month before Eid is called Ramadan. In Ramadan, many Muslims fast during the day. This means they don't eat or drink until sunset.

In the month of Ramadan, people think about the past year. They think about the things they did well and the things they want to do better. It is also a time to help other people.



عيد الفطر هو عيد إسلامى. الشهر الذى يسبق العيد هو شهر رمضان.
يصوم الكثير من المسلمين نهارًا فى رمضان. هذا يعنى أنهم لا يأكلون أو يشربون حتى الغروب.

فى شهر رمضان، يفكر الناس فى العام الماضى. يفكرون فى الأشياء التى قاموا بعملها بشكل جيد والأشياء التى يريدون أن يقوموا بها بشكل أفضل. إنه أيضًا وقت لمساعدة الآخرين.

When is Eid Al-Fitr?

متى يكون عيد الفطر؟

That's a very good question! It's different every year. Eid happens in the first day of the 10th Islamic month, called Shawwal. The month starts when people see the new moon.

هذا سؤال جيد جدًا! إنه يختلف من سنة لأخرى. يصادف العيد اليوم الأول من الشهر الإسلامى العاشر المسمى (شوال). يبدأ الشهر عندما يرى الناس الهلال.

Lots of kahk!

الكثير من الكعك!

Kahk are delicious cookies. People eat kahk to celebrate. They have nuts, sugar, and honey in them. Many families make kahk but you can buy them from a bakery, too.

الكعك هو بسكويت (كوكيز) لذيذ. يأكل الناس الكعك للاحتفال. يحتوى الكعك على مكسرات وسكر وعسل. تصنع العديد من العائلات الكعك ولكن يمكنك شراؤه من المخبز، أيضًا.

"Eid Mubarak"

عيد مبارك

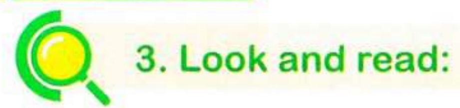
Eid is a time of celebration and for being happy. People say 'Eid Mubarak' to their friends. People go to the mosque and spend time with their families. They eat delicious food and celebrate!

العيد هو وقت الاحتفال والسعادة. يقول الناس "عيد مبارك" لأصدقائهم.
يذهب الناس إلى المسجد ويقضون الوقت مع عائلاتهم. يأكلون طعامًا لذيذًا ويحتفلون!

Check

Choose the correct answer:

1 We can buy kahk from the (mosque – club – bakery – park).
2 Muslims don't eat or drink until sunset in (Shawwal – Eid – Ramadan – festivals).
3 Kahk are (happy – delicious – scared – sad) cookies.



3. Look and read: انظر واقرأ:

Writing about a festival

للكتابة عن أى احتفال، استعن بالأسئلة الآتية:

Name of the festival: Sham El-Nessim

اسم العيد: شم النسيم

Sham El-Nessim is Egypt's oldest festival. It comes the day after Coptic Easter.

شم النسيم هو أقدم احتفال مصرى. إنه يأتى فى اليوم التالى لعيد الفصح القبطى.



Sham El-Nessim

شم النسيم

When is it? متى يكون؟

It comes the day after Coptic Easter.

إنه يأتى فى اليوم التالى لعيد الفصح.

What do people do?

ماذا يفعل الناس؟

People go to the parks and gardens with their families.

يذهب الناس إلى المتنزهات والحدائق مع عائلاتهم.

What do people eat?

ماذا يأكل الناس؟

People eat salted fish, onions, and also colored eggs.

يأكل الناس السمك المملح والبصل والبيض الملون.

Why do you like it?

لماذا تحبه؟

I like Sham El-Nessim because I always have picnics with my family and we have a great time together.

أحب شم النسيم لأننى أقوم دائمًا بالنزهات مع عائلتى ونقضى وقتًا ممتعًا معًا.

e.g. Write about a festival:

"Sham El-Nessim"



Sham El-Nessim is the oldest Egyptian festival. It comes the day after Coptic Easter. Children go to the parks and play. People go to the gardens with their families. They eat salted fish, onions, and also colored eggs. I like Sham El-Nessim because I always have picnics with my family and we have a great time together.

شم النسيم هو أقدم احتفال مصرى. ويأتى فى اليوم التالى لعيد الفصح القبطى. يذهب الأطفال إلى الحدائق ويلعبون. يذهب الناس إلى الحدائق مع عائلاتهم. يأكلون السمك المملح والبصل والبيض الملون أيضًا. أحب شم النسيم لأننى أقوم دائماً بالنزهات مع عائلتى ونقضى وقتًا ممتعًا معًا.



Lesson 3



● Remembering ● Understanding ● Applying ● Analyzing ● Evaluating ● Creating

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

(للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)

1 Eid Al-Fitr is a Muslim .... القاهرة – إدارة بدر التعليمية 2024

a) festival b) match c) birthday d) party

2 Muslims fast in ....

a) Shaaban b) Ragab c) Shawwal d) Ramadan

3 We eat .... to celebrate.

a) beans b) chocolate c) kahk d) mangoes

4 My mom makes kahk at the ....

a) bakery b) home c) school d) park

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 We .... my sister's birthday last week. الشرقية – إدارة مشتول 2024

a) celebrated b) ate c) drunk d) read

2 ".............................." are delicious cookies. الجيزة – إدارة شمال الجيزة 2024

a) Kahk b) Cake c) Yogurt d) Pizza

3 We can buy cookies and cakes from the .... محافظة القاهرة 2024

a) station b) hospital c) bakery d) library

4 Eid Al-Fitr is a Muslim .... القليوبية – إدارة نها 2024

a) subject b) festival c) job d) game

5 To ".............................." means not to eat or drink until sunset. الشرقية – إدارة القرين 2024

a) celebrate b) fast c) play d) read

6 We color boiled .... in Sham El-Nessim. دمياط 2024

a) eggs b) apples c) fish d) oranges

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

sunset – well – Ramadan – fast – Shawwal

القليوبية – إدارة بنها التعليمية 2024

Eid Al-Fitr is a Muslim festival. The month before Eid is called ....(1)............ . In Ramadan, Muslims ....(2)............ during the day. This means they don't eat or drink until ....(3)............ . In the month of Ramadan, people think about the things they did ....(4)............ and the things they want to do better. Ramadan is a time to help other people.



4 Read the text and answer the questions:

محافظة القاهرة – حدائق القبة 2024

Sham El-Nessim is my favorite festival. It is the oldest Egyptian festival. It comes the day after the Coptic Easter. Every year, we color eggs and give them to our friends and family. At Sham El-Nessim last year, my little sister Mona colored six eggs for our grandparents. Later that day, we went to the park for a picnic. Mom and grandma made lots of delicious food. We had a great time.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 Sham El-Nessim is the .... Egyptian festival.

a) newest b) oldest c) biggest d) smallest

2 We .... eggs at Sham El-Nessim.

a) mix b) brush c) color d) wash

B Answer the following questions:

3 How many eggs did Mona color?

....

4 What did mom and grandma make?

....

5 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements:

مجاب عنه صفحة 254

"Sham El-Nessim"

- What is it?
- What do people do?
- What do people eat?

القليوبية – بنها 2024

....

....

....

....



Lessons 4 & 5
Writing & Project





1. Listen and say: استمع وقل:



Main vocabulary

great-grandma	والدة الجدة	birthday	عيد ميلاد
picnic	نزهة	Christmas tree	شجرة الكريسماس

Extra vocabulary

writer	كاتب	special (adj.)	مميز	cousins	أولاد العم
aunt	عمة / خالة	uncle	عم / خال	huge (adj.)	ضخم
salad	سلطة	bread	خبز	countries	دول
Christmas	عيد الكريسماس	new life	حياة جديدة	lights	أضواء
games	ألعاب	colored balls	كرات ملونة	symbols	رموز

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
celebrate	يحتفل	celebrated	decorate	يزين	decorated
represent	يمثل	represented	play	يلعب	played

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
come	يأتي	came	put	يضع	put
sing	يغني	sang	throw	يلقي (يرمي)	threw

Expressions and Phrases

come together	يجتمعون معًا	have a picnic	يقوم بنزهة	all afternoon	طوال فترة بعد الظهر
Happy Birthday	عيد ميلاد سعيد	have fun	يستمتع	decorate with	يزين بـ

Important sentences جمل هامة

* Great-grandma's birthday party was two years ago. كان عيد ميلاد جدتي الكبرى منذ عامين.
* All my family came together to celebrate. اجتمعت عائلتي بأكملها للاحتفال.
* There was lots of food: salad, meat, fish, and bread. كان هناك الكثير من الطعام: السلطة واللحوم والأسماك والخبز.
* I played games with my cousins. We sang "Happy Birthday". لعبت ألعابًا مع أبناء عمومتي. غنينا أغنية "عيد ميلاد سعيد".
* It was a very special day because our great-grandma was very happy. كان يومًا مميزًا للغاية لأن جدتي الكبرى كانت سعيدة للغاية.





2. Look and read: انظر واقرأ:

Great-grandma's birthday عيد ميلاد والدة الجدة

What was the special day?

Two years ago, we had a very special party. My great-grandma was 90 years old!

منذ سنتين، كان لدينا حفل مميز جدًا. كان عمر والدة جدتى ٩٠ عامًا!



Who was at the party?

All my family came together to celebrate. All my cousins, aunts, and uncles came. We had a huge picnic in my aunt's garden. There was lots of food: salad, meat, fish, bread, cakes, cookies, and fruit.

اجتمعت كل العائلة معًا لتحتفل. أتى كل أبناء عمى، عماتى وأعمامى. قمنا بعمل نزهة كبيرة فى حديقة عمتى. كان يوجد الكثير من الطعام: سلطة، لحم، سمك، خبز، كيك (تورت)، بسكويت (كوكيز)، وفاكهة.



What did the writer eat and drink?

I ate a big slice of chocolate cake and I drank a bottle of orange juice. I also ate some salad and fruit.

تناولت قطعة كبيرة من كيكة الشوكولاتة وشربت زجاجة من عصير البرتقال. تناولت أيضًا بعض السلطة والفاكهة.

What did the writer do?

I played games with my cousins all afternoon. We ran. We threw a ball. We sang "Happy Birthday" to our great-grandma.

لعبت مع أبناء عمى طوال فترة بعد الظهيرة. جرينا. ورمينا الكرة. وقمنا بغناء «عيد ميلاد سعيد» لوالدة جدتى.

Why was it a special day?

It was a very special day because our great-grandma was very happy. She liked seeing the whole family. We all had fun.

كان يومًا مميزًا جدًا لأن والدة جدتى كانت سعيدة للغاية. لقد أحبت رؤية العائلة بأكملها. لقد استمتعنا جميعًا.

Check



1 Why was it a special day?

....

2 What song did they sing?

....





How to write about a special day

كيف تكتب عن يوم مميز

What was the special day? ما هو اليوم المميز؟	Who was there? من كان هناك؟	What did you eat? ماذا أكلت؟
What did you drink? ماذا شربت؟	What did you do? ماذا فعلت؟	Why was it a special day? لماذا كان هذا اليوم مميزاً؟

e.g.

Who was there? — What did you eat? — What was the special day?

One year ago, we had a very special party. My great grandpa was 80 years old! All my family came together to celebrate. I ate a big slice of chocolate cake and I drank a bottle of orange juice. I played games with my cousins all afternoon. We sang "Happy Birthday" to our great-grandma. It was a very special day because our great-grandma was very happy.

What did you drink? — Why was it a special day? — What did you do?



In many countries, people decorate Christmas trees at Christmas. These trees are always green. The trees represent new life. People decorate the tree with lights, colored balls, and stars.

فى العديد من البلدان، يزين الناس أشجار الكريسماس فى عيد الميلاد. هذه الأشجار دائمًا خضراء. تمثل الأشجار حياة جديدة. يزين الناس الشجرة بالأضواء والكُرات الملونة والنجوم.



Lessons 4 & 5



• Remembering • Understanding • Applying • Analyzing • Evaluating • Creating

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 All my family came to .... my great-grandma's birthday.

a) spell b) allow c) celebrate d) play

2 I played .... with my cousins all afternoon. الفيوم - إدارة إطسا 2024

a) foods b) games c) juice d) jobs

3 Last weekend, we .... a picnic in my aunt's garden.

a) ate b) drank c) had d) sang

4 Christmas trees have .... balls and lights. دمياط – كفر سعد 2024

a) dark b) colored c) bad d) fat

5 We .... "Happy Birthday" to our great-grandma.

a) ate b) sang c) decorated d) celebrated

6 My great-grandma is my grandmother's ....

a) cousin b) sister c) mother d) aunt

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

الجيزة – إدارة الهرم 2024

games – picnic – celebrate – threw – sleep

Two years ago, we had a very special party. My great-grandma was 90 years old. All my family came together to ....(1)............ . All my cousins, aunts, and uncles came. We had a huge ....(2)............ in my aunt's garden. I played ....(3)............ with my cousins all afternoon. We ran and ....(4)............ a ball.

3 Read the text and answer the questions:

الجيزة – عمرانية 2024

Last week, it was my mother's birthday. All my family came to celebrate. All my cousins, aunts, and uncles came. There was lots of food: salad, meat, bread, cakes, cookies, and fruit. I played with my cousins. My brother Ali ate a big slice of chocolate cake. My sister drank a glass of orange juice. We sang "Happy birthday" to my mother. It was a special day. We were very happy.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 The general idea of the text is about "..................................".

a) My father's birthday
b) Our picnic
c) My mom's birthday
d) A wedding party

2 My sister drank a glass of .... juice.

a) apple
b) banana
c) orange
d) mango

B Answer the following questions:

3 When was the mother's birthday?

....

4 Who ate a big slice of chocolate cake?

....

4 Punctuate the following:

We had a huge picnic in my aunt s garden

....

5 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements:

مجاب عنه صفحة 255

"My special day"

الشرقية – الحسينية 2024

- What is your special day?
- When is it?
- Why is it a special day?

....
....
....
....

Unit 8 REVIEW



يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من مراجعة أهم الأجزاء التى وردت بالوحدة.

Lesson (1)

a packet of	عبوة من	milk	لبن
a bar of	قالب من	water	مياه
a carton of	علبة من	lemonade	عصير الليمون
a bottle of	زجاجة من	cake	كيك
a slice of	شريحة من	pizza	بيتزا
a piece of	قطعة من	meat	لحم
cookies	بسكويت	cheese	جبن
candies	حلوى	bread	خبز
chocolate	شوكولاتة	juice	عصير
soap	صابون	thirsty	عطشان

Lesson (2)

poem	قصيدة	beach	شاطئ
octopus	أخطبوط	Damietta	دمياط
dish	طبق / وجبة	meal	وجبة
trip	رحلة قصيرة	photos	صور
deep	عميق	video	فيديو
frozen	مجمد	healthy	صحى
lovely	جميل	jellyfish	قنديل البحر
dessert	تحلية	instead of	بدلًا من

Lesson (3)

sunset	غروب الشمس	festival	مهرجان/ عيد
kahk	كحك	Muslim	مُسلم
mosque	مسجد	Eid	العيد
festival	مهرجان	Eid Al-Fitr	عيد الفطر
different	مختلف	Islamic month	شهر إسلامى (هجرى)
before	قبل	Eid Mubarak	عيد مبارك/ عيد سعيد
delicious	لذيذ	Sham El-Nessim	عيد شم النسيم
honey	عسل	Coptic Easter	عيد الفصح القبطى
bakery	مخبز	celebration	احتفال
colored	ملون	Ramadan	شهر رمضان
picnic	نزهة	Shawwal	شهر شوال

Lessons (4 & 5)

birthday	عيد ميلاد	colored balls	كرات ملونة
special	مميز	stars	نجوم
uncle	عم / خال	symbols	رموز
huge	ضخم	Christmas	عيد الكريسماس
lights	أضواء	great-grandma	والدة الجدة
cousins	أولاد العم	picnic	نزهة
salad	سلطة	Christmas tree	شجرة الكريسماس
countries	دول	new life	حياة جديدة

Language Focus

The Past Simple Tense with Irregular Verbs

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Irregular verbs أفعـــال غير منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
see	saw	go	went
swim	swam	forget	forgot
eat	ate	cut	cut
sing	sang	come	came
catch	caught	say	said
buy	bought	run	ran
fly	flew	have	had
hear	heard	make	made
give	gave	am/is	was
write	wrote	are	were
throw	threw	drink	drank
feel	felt		



CHECK YOUR VOCABULARY



تأكد من حفظك لكلمات الدروس قبل البدء فى إجابة اختبار الوحدة.

Lesson 1

قالب شكولاتة	....	زجاجة مياه	....
قطعة جبنة	....	عبوة بسكويت (كوكيز)	....
علبة عصير	....	شريحة كيك	....
فظيع	....	طعام	....
حفلة	....	عطشان	....

Lesson 2

أخطبوط	....	قنديل البحر	....
زبادى	....	صور	....
مجمد	....	رحلة قصيرة	....
صحى	....	تحلية	....

Lesson 3

كعك	....	مسجد	....
احتفال	....	غروب الشمس	....
مخبز	....	مهرجان	....
عسل	....	شهر رمضان	....

Lessons 4 & 5

نزهة	....	عيد ميلاد	....
والدة الجدة	....	شجرة الكريسماس	....
ضخم	....	مميز	....
أولاد العم	....	عمة/ خالة	....
عم / خال	....	خبز	....
سلطة	....	رموز	....
أضواء	....	ملون	....
حياة جديدة	....	يزين	....

WRITING TIME



لكى تتمكن من كتابة الموضوعات بشكل مميز، اتبع هذه الخطوات.

How to write about Eid Al-Fitr:

1. What is Eid Al-Fitr?
2. When is it?
3. How do people celebrate it?
4. What do people do in it?

Eid Al-Fitr

Eid Al-Fitr is a Muslim festival.
Eid happens in the first day of the 10th Islamic month, called Shawwal.
People eat kahk to celebrate. People go to the mosque and spend time with their families.

How to write about a festival or celebration:

1. What is the festival?
2. When is the festival?
3. How do people celebrate it?

"Sham El-Nessim"

Sham El-Nessim is the oldest Egyptian festival. It comes the day after Coptic Easter. People go to the parks with their families to celebrate it. They eat salted fish and colored eggs, too.

How to write about a special day:

1. Yesterday/ Last week was + اسم مناسبة.
2. My whole family / friends came to celebrate.
3. I had + محدد كمية ونوع الأكل.
4. I / We + نشاط فى الماضى.
5. It was a day to remember.

"A special day"

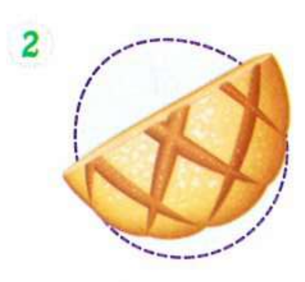
Yesterday was my grandma's birthday party. My whole family came to celebrate. I had two slices of the birthday cake and a carton of juice. We played games and sang many songs. It was a day to remember.

يتضمن هذا الجزء أهم الأسئلة التى وردت بكتاب الوزارة.

1 Look and write:

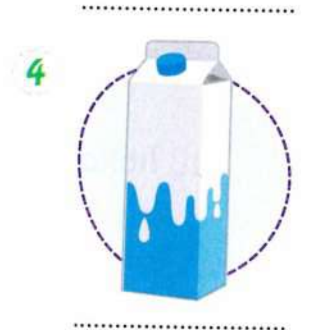
1 

....

2 
....

3 

....

4 
....

5 

....

6 
....

2 Write past simple form of these verbs:

see	....	sing	....
make	....	is	....
swim	....	have	....
eat	....	feel	....
go	....	catch	....

3 Complete the sentences using the correct verb:

ate – sang – saw – swam – made – went

1 I .... a great movie last night.

2 I .... a cake, but I used salt instead of sugar. It tasted horrible.

3 I had my swimming test yesterday, I .... 50 meters!

4 I .... too much candy. I feel sick.

5 I .... to the beach last year. It was fun!

6 We all .... a song in class today.







1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

4

(للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب) القاهرة - حدائق القبة 2024

1 Sham El-Nessim is a celebration of ....
a) winter b) spring c) summer d) winter

2 We can play in the ....
a) schools b) farms c) parks d) libraries

3 We can eat ....
a) meat b) kahk c) fish d) pizza

4 Sham El-Nessim is a festival for ....
a) French b) Americans c) Egyptians d) Italians



2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

2

1 Karim drank a .... of water. القليوبية - إدارة بنها 2024
a) piece b) bar c) bottle d) slice

2 A: Which .... is your favorite? B: Eid Al-Fitr. القاهرة - إدارة شرق مدينة نصر 2024
a) game b) festival c) subject d) music



3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

milk – fish – play – festival – colored

أسيوط - إدارة البدارى 2024

I like to celebrate Sham El-Nessim. It's an Egyptian ....(1).......... . During Sham El-Nessim, people eat salted ....(2).........., onions, and ....(3).......... eggs. Children go to the parks to ....(4).......... . We have a great time together.



4 Read the text and answer the questions:

5

Ramadan is a very important month for Muslims. In Ramadan, many Muslims fast during the day. This means they don't eat or drink until the sunset. In the month of Ramadan, people think about the past year. They think about the things they did well and the things they want to do better. It's also a time to help other people. Eid Al-Fitr is on the first day of the 10^{th} Islamic month, called Shawwal.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 Ramadan is a very important .... for Muslims.

a) year b) month c) day d) week

2 Ramadan is time to .... others.

a) help b) eat c) drink d) catch

B Answer the following questions:

3 What do Muslims do during the day of Ramadan?

....

4 When is Eid Al-Fitr?

....

Writing

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets: 8

1 Hala .... (see) some animals yesterday. الشرقية – إدارة مشتول 2024

2 I want two .... (bottles) of cake, please. القاهرة – الوايلى 2024

3 Where did Aya .... (went) last year? القاهرة – إدارة الشروق 2024

4 She .... (doesn't) buy a new dress last week. الإسكندرية 2024

6 Punctuate the following: ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى: 2

eid is the time of celebration

....

7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements: 7

مجاب عنه صفحة 255

"Eid Al-Fitr"

- When is Eid Al-Fitr?
- How do people celebrate Eid Al-Fitr?
- What do we eat in Eid Al-Fitr?

بورسعيد – إدارة الزهور 2024

....

....

....

....



Assess your progress

< 50%	50 : 64%	65 : 84%	85 : 100%
Study again	Practice more	Solve more exams	Well done!

Unit 8 AL-AZHAR CORNER

تحتوى هذه الصفحة على أسئلة خاصة بمواصفات الأزهر.



1 Listen and choose the correct answer:

(للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)

1 .... years ago, we had a very special party.

(Two – Five – Three)

2 All my family came together to ....

(decorate – celebrate – study)

3 We had a huge picnic in our aunt's ....

(kitchen – garden – balcony)

2 Read and complete the dialogue:

all – packet – many – bar

Wael : How .... cookies did you eat?

Reem : A .... of cookies.

Wael : Is that .... ?

Reem : Maybe a .... of chocolate, only a small one.

3 Choose the correct answer:

1 May I have a (slice – bottle – piece) of lemonade, please?

2 We had ice cream for (dessert – dish – desert).

3 Kahk are delicious cookies with nuts and (salted fish – eggs – honey) in them.

4 (Do – Does – Did) you have a good time yesterday with your friends, Hana?

5 Sara looked a bit green. She didn't (feel – feels – felt) well.



Unit Objectives

- By the end of this unit, the student will be able to:
  - read about party games.
  - listen about some unusual festivals around the world.
  - practice more irregular past simple verb forms.
  - practice the pronunciation of oo and ee words.
  - explore how to present information.
  - write an invitation.
  - work in groups to organize a class celebration.

- بنهاية هذه الوحدة، سيكون التلميذ قادرًا على أن:
  - يقرأ عن الألعاب الجماعية.
  - يستمع إلى بعض المهرجانات الغريبة حول العالم.
  - يتدرب على استخدام المزيد من الأفعال غير المنتظمة فى زمن الماضى.
  - يتدرب على نطق الكلمات التى تحتوى على oo و ee.
  - يكتشف كيفية تقديم المعلومات.
  - يكتب دعوة.
  - يعمل فى مجموعات لتنظيم احتفال صفى.

Did you know?

- Ful medames is a very old dish. *Archaeologists found some Ful Medames in one of the Pyramids! It was thousands of years ago.

* Archaeologists — علماء الآثار

Find out!

- My mom and dad remember many celebrations they had when they were children. They remember Eid Al-Fitr, Eid Al-Adha, and the *monetary gifts they had then.

* monetary gifts — العيدية



Lesson 1
Games Around The World
ألعاب حول العالم





1. Listen, point, and say:
استمع، أشر، وقل:



Main vocabulary

Traditional party games:
ألعاب جماعية تقليدية:


Pass the parcel
لعبة نقل الطرود


Musical chairs
لعبة الكراسى الموسيقية


Hide and seek
لعبة الغميضة


play games
يلعب الألعاب


give presents
يعطى الهدايا


open presents
يفتح الهدايا


wrap presents
يغلف الهدايا


play music
تشغل الموسيقى

Extra vocabulary

wedding	زفاف	children	أطفال	traditional (adj.)	تقليدى
paper	ورق	circle	دائرة	person	شخص
ready (adj.)	جاهز	without	بدون	popular (adj.)	مشهور / محبوب
wide (adj.)	واسع	seeker	الباحث	the last	الأخير
winner	فائز	outside	خارجًا	team	فريق



When we play together, we learn to:
عندما نلعب معًا، نتعلم أن:

have fun	نستمتع
help others	نساعد الآخرين
respect rules	نحترم القواعد
listen to others	نستمع إلى الآخرين

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعـــال منتظمـة

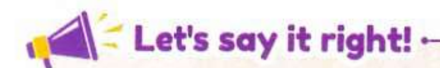
Present		Past	Present		Past	Present		Past
celebrate	يحتفل	celebrated	love	يحب	loved	wrap	يغلف	wrapped
cover	يغطى	covered	stop	يتوقف	stopped	unwrap	يفتح	unwrapped
join	ينضم	joined	close	يغلق	closed	count	يعد	counted

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past	Present		Past
sit	يجلس	sat	give	يعطى	gave	become	يصبح	became
keep	يحتفظ بـ ...	kept	put	يضع	put	hold	يمسك	held
seek	يبحث	sought	find	يجد	found	hide	يختبئ	hid

Expressions and Phrases

get together	يجتمعون معًا	around the world	حول العالم	more fun	أكثر متعة
lots of	الكثير من	take off	ينزع	put out	يضع
run around	يجرى حول	take away	يستبعد	the last one left	الشخص الأخير المتبقى



Let's say it right!

- لاحظ أن الحروف (tion) تُنطق /ʃən/ (شن) كما فى (traditional).
- لاحظ أن حرف الـ (w) صامت لا يُنطق فى كلمة (wrap).

Take care!

- الكلمات الإنجليزية لها معانٍ مختلفة حسب النص:

e.g. play games يلعب الألعاب — play music يشغل الموسيقى

- يمكننا الحصول على عكس بعض الكلمات عن طريق إضافة البادئة (un):

e.g. wrap يغلف ⟶ unwrap يفتح

- نستخدم اللاحقة (er) لنوضح الشخص الذى يقوم بالفعل.

e.g. seek يبحث ⟶ seeker باحث — win يفوز ⟶ winner فائز — play يلعب ⟶ player لاعب

Check

Choose the correct answer:

1 Musical (presents – parcels – chairs – weddings) is my favorite party game.
2 It's not good to (open – play – wrap – pass) music so loudly.
3 You need to (wrap – stop – open – play) the present in paper before you give it to her.
4 When we play in a (chair– team – circle – parcel), we help others.

Party games ألعاب جماعية



2. Look and read: انظر واقرأ:

When we get together with our family and friends to celebrate something like a birthday or a wedding, the children often play games. Here are some traditional games people play around the world.

عندما نجتمع مع عائلتنا وأصدقائنا للاحتفال بشىء ما كأعياد الميلاد أو حفلات الزفاف، فإن الأطفال غالبًا ما يلعبون الألعاب. هذه بعض الألعاب التقليدية التى يلعبها الناس حول العالم.

Pass the parcel نقل الطرود

We all love to give presents. It's even more fun to open presents.

كلنا نحب إعطاء الهدايا، كما أن فتح الهدايا أمر أكثر متعة.

How to play: كيفية اللعب:

Wrap a small present and cover it in lots and lots... and lots of paper. The players sit in a circle.

Play some music. قم بتشغيل بعض الموسيقى.



Players give the present to the next person as the music plays. When the music stops, the player holding the present takes off one piece of paper. The player who unwraps the present keeps it.

قم بلف هدية صغيرة وغطها بالكثير والكثير من الأوراق. يجلس اللاعبون فى دائرة.
يمرر اللاعبون الهدية للشخص التالى أثناء تشغيل الموسيقى. عندما تتوقف الموسيقى، يقوم اللاعب الذى يحمل الهدية بنزع ورقة واحدة عنها. اللاعب الذى يتمكن من فتح الهدية يحتفظ بها.

Musical chairs الكراسى الموسيقية



Run but be ready to sit! اجرى ولكن كن مستعدًّا للجلوس!

How to play: كيفية اللعب:

Put out some chairs. If you have 6 players, you only need 5 chairs. Play some music.
Players run around the chairs. When the music stops, everyone sits down.
The player without the chair is "out". Take away one chair and play again.

ضع بعض الكراسى. إذا كان لديك 6 لاعبين، فأنت تحتاج فقط إلى 5 كراسى. يقوم اللاعبون بالجرى حول الكراسى. حين تتوقف الموسيقى، يجلس الجميع. اللاعب الذى يبقى بدون كرسى يصبح خارج اللعبة. استبعد كرسيًّا ثم أعد اللعب.

Hide and seek الغميضة

This is a very old and popular game. Many players can join in this exciting game. All you need is a wide place to play it.

هـذه لعبـة قديمـة جـدًّا ومشـهورة. يسـتطيع العديـد مـن اللاعبيـن الانضمـام إلـى هـذه اللعبـة



الشـيقة.



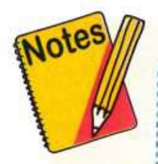
How to play: كيفية اللعب:

One player, called the seeker, closes his or her eyes and counts to ten.
The other players hide. The seeker tries to find them.
The first player the seeker finds becomes the next seeker. The last one left is the winner.

يقـوم لاعـب - ويسـمى (الباحـث) - بإغـلاق عينيـه والعـد إلـى عشـرة. يقـوم باقـى اللاعبيـن بالاختبـاء. يحـاول الباحـث إيجادهـم. أول لاعـب يجـده الباحـث يصبـح الباحـث التالى. الشـخص الأخيـر المتبقـى هـو الفائـز.

Important sentences جمل هامة

* When children get together, they play party games. عندما يجتمع الأطفال معًا فإنهم يلعبون ألعابًا جماعية.
* In "Pass the parcel", the player who unwraps the present keeps it. فى لعبة نقل الطرود، اللاعب الذى يفتح الهدية يحتفظ بها.
* In "Musical chairs", the player without a chair is "out". فى لعبة الكراسى الموسيقية اللاعب الذى يبقى بدون كرسى يكون خارج اللعبة.
* Hide and seek is a very old and popular game. تعتبر لعبة الغميضة لعبة قديمة ومحبوبة جدًّا.
* In "Hide and seek", one player, called the seeker, closes his or her eyes and tries to find the other players. فى لعبة "الغميضة"، يغلق أحد اللاعبين، ويُدعى الباحث، عينيه ويحاول العثور على اللاعبين الآخرين.



Pass the parcel

You need people.	You need presents.	You need music.

Musical chairs

You need people.	You need music.	You need to run.	The player without a chair is out.

Hide and seek

You need people.	You need to cover your eyes and play it.	It's better to play it outside.	You need to run.



Lesson 1



• Remembering • Understanding • Applying • Analyzing • Evaluating • Creating

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

(للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)

1 To play ...., you need a present, music, and lots of paper.
a) Pass the parcel b) Musical chairs
c) Hide and seek d) football

2 .... a small present with lots of paper.
a) Unwrap b) Play c) Wrap d) Pass

3 The players sit in a ....
a) line b) circle c) triangle d) square

4 Pass the present as the .... plays.
a) toys b) music c) chairs d) papers

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 Hide and seek is a .... game. All the children know it. القاهرة - روض الفرج 2024
a) strange b) cold c) popular d) bad

2 He won the game. He's the .... أسيوط - إدارة ديروط 2024
a) winner b) parcel c) loser d) present

3 In "Musical chairs," the player without the chair is "........................". أسيوط - إدارة الغنايم 2024
a) next b) inside c) behind d) out

4 In Hide and seek, all you need is a .... place to play it. بنى سويف - الواسطى 2024
a) small b) tiny c) high d) wide

5 We can play .... at the party. الجيزة - البدرشين 2024
a) games b) class c) tree d) window

6 We must respect the .... when we play. القاهرة - روض الفرج 2024
a) rides b) roles c) rules d) ropes

7 We need music to play .... بورسعيد 2024
a) football b) Hide and seek c) Musical chairs d) tennis

8 My friend gives me a .... on my birthday. الإسكندرية - المنتزه ثان 2024
a) present b) language c) homework d) race

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

seven – sits – run – chairs – six

البحر الأحمر - الغردقة 2024

I love to play party games like "Musical Chairs". To play it, we need ....(1)............ and music. If you have seven players, you only need ....(2)............ chairs. Players ....(3)............ around the chairs. When the music stops, everyone ....(4)............ down. The player without a chair is "out".

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

القاهرة – ادارة السلام 2024

I am Waleed. I love party games. I like playing games with my friends and with my family. My friend Sami likes to play Pass the parcel game. In pass the parcel, the winner takes the present. My favorite game is the Musical chairs. It's exciting. I like to play it with my friends. I play it in the garden at home. If we are six players, we put five chairs. I like to sit down quickly to win.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 Waleed loves .... games.

a) birthday   b) party   c) bad   d) group

2 The Musical chairs is ....

a) exciting   b) bad   c) not fun   d) boring

B Answer the following questions:

3 Who likes to play Pass the parcel?

....

4 What does the winner take?

....

5 Punctuate the following:

1 hide and seek is a very old game

بنى سويف – إدارة ناصر 2024

....

2 the players sit in a circle

القاهرة – إدارة السلام 2024

....

6 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements:

"Hide and seek"

مجاب عنه صفحة 255

- What do you need to play it?
- How do you play this game?
- Who is the winner in this game?

القاهرة – الشرابية 2024

....

....

....

....



Lesson 2
Festivals around the world
المهرجانات حول العالم





Reading



1. Listen and say: استمع وقل:



Main vocabulary

Cheese rolling	دحرجة الجبن	Kite festival	مهرجان الطائرة الورقية
Chinese New Year	عيد رأس السنة الصينية	La Tomatina	مهرجان الطماطم

Extra vocabulary

festival	احتفال/ عيد	travels	سفريات/ رحلات	weird (adj.)	غريب
wonderful (adj.)	رائع	traditions	تقاليد	UK (United Kingdom)	المملكة المتحدة
round (adj.)	مستدير	hill	تل/ هضبة	funny (adj.)	مضحك
strange (adj.)	غريب	Asia	آسيا	celebration	احتفال
envelope	ظرف	way	وسيلة/ طريقة	good luck	حظ سعيد
amount	كمية/ مقدار	even number	رقم زوجى	Spain	إسبانيا
messy (adj.)	فوضوى	few (adj.)	قليل (العدد)	India	الهند
monsters	وحوش	colorful (adj.)	ملون	silly (adj.)	سخيف / غبى
smiling faces	وجوه ضاحكة	mud	طين	dragon	تنين
yuan	يوان (عملة صينية)	alive (adj.)	حى (على قيد الحياة)	string	خيط / حبل

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
push	يدفع	pushed	happen	يحدث	happened
pull	يسحب	pulled	wish	يتمنى	wished

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
bring	يحضر	brought	understand	يفهم	understood
run	يجرى	ran	wear	يرتدى	wore
fall	يقع	fell	hurt	يجرح / يؤذى	hurt
throw	يقذف	threw	fly	يُطير	flew

Expressions and Phrases

the rest of the world بقية العالم	each other بعضهم البعض	look back at يلقى نظرة على
run after يطارد	look a bit dangerous تبدو خطيرة بعض الشيء	at the end فى النهاية
(be) covered in مغطى بـ	for fun من أجل المتعة	all over the world فى جميع أنحاء العالم
full of ملىء بـ	a few examples of بعض الأمثلة على	stop laughing يتوقف عن الضحك
make a mess يصنع فوضى	take a shower يستحم	take part in يشارك فى



Let's say it right!

- لاحظ أن حرفى الـ (si) ينطقان /ʒ/ (ج) كما فى (Asia).
- لاحظ أن حرفى الـ (ck) ينطقان /k/ (ك) كما فى (luck).

Take care!

تشير الأرقام الترتيبية إلى ترتيب شيء ما بالنسبة للأرقام الأخرى.

e.g. This is the fourth festival.

أسماء البلاد والمهرجانات تبدأ بحروف كبيرة.

e.g. China, Spain, Asia, India La Tomatina, Kite festival



Check

Choose the correct answer:

1. I played a lot of games yesterday. It was a (terrible – horrible – wonderful – bad) day.
2. Everything in his room wasn't in the right place. His room was (alive – messy – wonderful – good).
3. Don't go inside the house. Your shoes are covered in (string – mud – fun – luck).
4. He always makes us smile. He is (angry – sad – funny – weird).

Listening script page 38 

هذا النص مأخوذ من كتاب دليل المعلم.

Different festivals احتفالات مختلفة



2. Look and read: انظر واقرأ:

My name is Dina and it's my job to tell you about my travels and to bring the rest of the world into your home. The world is a big, beautiful place. The more we learn about other countries, the better we can understand each other and live together. This week I'm looking back at some of the weird and wonderful traditions I saw during my travels.

اسمى دينا ووظيفتى أن أخبرك عن رحلاتى وأن أجلب بقية العالم إلى منزلك. العالم مكان كبير وجميل. كلما عرفنا المزيد عن البلدان الأخرى، كان بإمكاننا فهم بعضنا البعض والعيش معًا بشكل أفضل. هذا الأسبوع، ألقى نظرة على بعض التقاليد الغريبة والرائعة التى رأيتها خلال رحلاتى.

Cheese rolling مهرجان دحرجة الجُبن



Let's start with this one in the UK, it was one of the strangest things I ever saw. Look, they pushed the round cheese down the hill and hundreds of people ran after it. Why did they do it? The person who won the race, won the cheese. It was funny (and very strange), but it looked a bit dangerous. Lots of people fell but nobody was hurt.

لنبدأ بهذا التقليد فى المملكة المتحدة، لقد كان من أغرب الأشياء التى رأيتها على الإطلاق. انظروا ، لقد دفعوا الجبن المستدير أسفل التل وركض مئات الأشخاص وراءه. لماذا فعلوا ذلك؟ الشخص الذى فاز بالسباق فاز بالجبن. كان الأمر مضحكًا (وغريبًا جدًّا)، لكنه بدا خطيرًا إلى حد ما. سقط الكثير من الناس ولكن لم يصب أحد.

Chinese New Year العام الصينى الجديد



The next one was in China and many parts of Asia. People at weddings and celebrations gave the children and young people red envelopes.
I asked my friend about this and she told me that there was money inside the envelope and it was their way of saying good luck. The amount of money usually had an even number at the end (like, 2,4,6,8, etc.) because they said this was good luck.

المهرجان التالى فى الصين وأجزاء كثيرة من آسيا. أعطى الناس فى حفلات الزفاف والاحتفالات للأطفال والشباب مظاريف حمراء. سألت صديقتى عن هذا وأخبرتنى أن هناك نقودًا داخل الظرف وأن هذه طريقتهم فى قول حظ سعيد. عادةً ما يكون مبلغ المال رقم زوجى فى النهاية (مثل ، 2 ، 4 ، 6 ، 8 ، إلخ) لأنهم قالوا إن هذا كان حظًّا سعيدًا.



La Tomatina مهرجان الطماطم

I had lots of fun here, it was called La Tomatina and it was in Spain. It was very messy! Everybody threw old tomatoes at each other. I couldn't see anything. After a few minutes, everyone was covered in red tomatoes! Why do they throw old tomatoes? For fun!

لقد استمتعت كثيرًا هنا ، وكان يسمى La Tomatina وكان فى إسبانيا. لقد كان فوضويًا جدًا! ألقى الجميع الطماطم القديمة على بعضهم البعض. لم أستطع رؤية أى شىء. بعد بضع دقائق كان الجميع مغطى بالطماطم الحمراء! لماذا يرمون الطماطم القديمة؟ للمتعة!

Kite festival مهرجان الطائرات الورقية



This is the fourth one. It was a beautiful kite festival. These happen all over the world, but this one was in India. Hundreds of people, young and old, flew their kites. The sky was full of animals, fish, monsters... I tried to fly one of the kites, it was very difficult!
Well, that's just a few examples of the festivals I saw during my travels. I saw people who wore colorful clothes, who ate delicious food, who did some silly things. Most importantly, in all these festivals I saw lots of happy smiling faces.

هذا هو الرابع. كان مهرجان طائرات ورقية جميلًا. يحدث هذا فى جميع أنحاء العالم، ولكن هذا كان فى الهند. مئات من الناس، صغارًا وكبارًا، طيروا طائراتهم الورقية. كانت السماء مليئة بحيوانات، أسماك، وحوش.. حاولت أن أطير إحدى الطائرات الورقية، كان الأمر صعبًا للغاية!

حسنًا، هذه مجرد أمثلة قليلة من المهرجانات التى رأيتها خلال رحلاتى. رأيت أشخاصًا يرتدون ملابس ملونة، ويأكلون طعامًا لذيذًا، ويقومون ببعض الأشياء السخيفة. الأهم من ذلك، فى كل هذه المهرجانات رأيت الكثير من الوجوه المبتسمة السعيدة.

Check

Choose the correct answer:

1. They give the children red (kite – envelope – dragon – festival) and wish them good luck.
2. People throw tomatoes in (Cheese rolling – summer – Chinese – La Tomatina) festival.
3. The person who won the race, won the (potato – tomato – cheese – yogurt).
4. He tried to fly one of the (cheese – race – envelope – kites), but it was difficult!



The Past Simple Tense زمن الماضى البسيط

1) Regular verbs: الأفعال المنتظمة:

Subject (الفاعل) + (inf.) الفعل فى المصدر + (ed/d/ied) ... .



We celebrated Ahmed's birthday yesterday.

2) Irregular verbs: الأفعال غير المنتظمة:

Subject (الفاعل) + التصريف الثانى للفعل ... .



I won the race last year.

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Irregular verbs أفعـــال غير منتظمـة

Present		Past	Present		Past	Present		Past
see	يرى	saw	run	يجرى	ran	fall	يسقط	fell
win	يفوز	won	fly	يطير	flew	give	يعطى	gave
tell	يخبر	told	have	يملك	had	say	يقول	said
throw	يلقى (يرمى)	threw	wear	يرتدى	wore	buy	يشترى	bought
make	يصنع	made	forget	ينسى	forgot	go	يذهب	went
come	يأتى	came	write	يكتب	wrote	bring	يجلب/ يحضر	brought



بعض الأفعال فى التصريف الثانى تتشابه فى النطق مع كلمات أخرى:



ate – eight / read – red / won – one

Check

Choose the correct answer:

1 I (find – found – finding – finds) this key yesterday.

2 They (drinking – drank – drinks – drink) 3 cups of coffee last night.

3 She (see – saw – won – sees) Sara last week.

4 My dad (tell – tells – told – took) me a story in the past.

5 Did you (bring – brings – bringing – brought) your book?



Lesson 2



• Remembering • Understanding • Applying • Analyzing • Evaluating • Creating

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 It isn't easy to .... a kite. أسيوط – إدارة القوصية 2024

a) run b) throw c) fly d) wear

2 He gave me a red envelope .... me good luck. الجيزة – إدارة الهرم 2024

a) playing b) wishing c) wearing d) reading

3 She is very .... Her books are all over the ground.

a) messy b) wonderful c) inside d) alive

4 He is .... He makes us laugh.

a) delicious b) strange c) funny d) messy

5 The police officer ran .... the thief.

a) on b) in c) after d) under

6 I didn't climb that tree. It looked a bit ....

a) green b) dangerous c) funny d) wonderful

7 We won the competition that we took .... in.

a) part b) game c) back d) fun

8 Anything has the shape of a circle is ....

a) triangle b) square c) cube d) round

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: محافظة الإسكندرية – إدارة العجمي التعليمية 2024

after – push – rolling – race – festivals

There are many wonderful ....(1)............ that I saw during my travels. The most interesting one was the Cheese ....(2)............ festival. It takes place in the UK. People ....(3)............ the round cheese down the hill. Hundreds of people run ....(4)............ it. The person who wins the race, wins the cheese.

3 Read the text and answer the questions:

The world is a big, beautiful place. People celebrate different festivals around the world. The Chinese New Year festival is a wonderful festival in China. People give the children and the young people red envelopes. There's usually money inside them. It's the Chinese way of saying good luck. The amount of money usually has an even number at the end because they say it brings good luck, too.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 The general idea of the text is about .... festival.
a) Cheese rolling b) Chinese New Year
c) La Tomatina d) Kite

2 The amount of money usually has a/an .... number at the end.
a) odd b) even c) zero d) decimal

B Answer the following questions:

3 How do Chinese people celebrate Chinese New Year?
....

4 What is usually inside the envelopes?
....

4 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1 My sister .... (writes) a nice paragraph yesterday.
2 What .... (do) you do last week?
3 I didn't .... (wore) a jacket because it was hot yesterday.
4 My dad .... (comes) back late last night.
5 My friend .... (bring) me some water to drink.
6 Hagar .... (buy) a new dress last Monday.
7 I .... (go) to school early this morning.
8 He didn't .... (threw) the ball to me.
9 What subject .... (do) you study yesterday? الإسماعيلية 2024
10 I .... (play) football with my friends last Friday. البحر الأحمر - إدارة الغردقة 2024
11 Two years ago, we .... (have) a very special party. القاهرة - ادارة السلام 2024
12 She was happy because she .... (win) the match last week. القاهرة - ادارة السلام 2024
13 We visited the Egyptian Museum last week. We .... (was) happy. القاهرة 2024
14 I .... (fall) over and my friend helped me. بني سويف 2024
15 We .... (eat) a big cake yesterday. الجيزة 2024
16 We .... (see) a show yesterday. القاهرة - إدارة الشروق 2024

5 Punctuate the following:

1 it was funny, but it looked a bit dangerous
....
2 I couldn t see anything
....
3 why do they throw old tomatoes
....
4 i saw lots of happy smiling faces
....



Lesson 3





A Citizenship المواطنة



1. Listen, point, and say: استمع، أشر وقل:



Main vocabulary



Ful Medames فول مدمس



Basbousa بسبوسة



karate كاراتيه

Extra vocabulary

special (adj.)	مميز	country	دولة / بلد	history	تاريخ
rich (adj.)	غنى	culture	ثقافة	proud (adj.)	فخور
ideas	أفكار	wonderful (adj.)	رائع	beans	فول
olive oil	زيت الزيتون	garlic	ثوم	sweet (adj.)	حلو (مسكر)
semolina	دقيق السميد	syrup	شراب السكر	age	سن / عمر
energy	طاقة	helpful (adj.)	متعاون	friendly (adj.)	ودود
visitors	زوار	hospitable (adj.)	مضياف	nature	طبيعة
desert	صحراء	south	جنوب	east	شرق
Sinai region	منطقة سيناء	mountains	جبال	authors	مؤلفون
prizes	جوائز	salty (adj.)	مملح	national (adj.)	وطنى

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
continue	يستمر	continued	celebrate	يحتفل	celebrated
cook	يطبخ	cooked	snow	يغطى بالثلج	snowed

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
think	يفكر / يعتقد	thought	win	يفوز	won

Expressions and Phrases

famous for	مشهور بـ ...	proud of	فخور بـ	(be) described with	يوصف بـ ...
served with	يقدم مع	more than half	أكثر من النصف	under the age of	تحت سن
full of energy	ملىء بالطاقة	make movies	يصنع الأفلام	participate in	يشارك فى

What makes us special? ما الذى يجعلنا مميزين؟



2. Look and read: انظر واقرأ:

We often celebrate things in our country's history. A country like Egypt is famous for its history and we should continue to celebrate its rich culture. Let's look around us and say why we should be proud of our beautiful country.

نحن غالبًا ما نحتفل بأشياء تخص تاريخ بلادنا. بلد كمصر مشهورة بتاريخها ويجب علينا أن نستمر فى الاحتفال بثقافتها الغنية. دعنا ننظر حولنا ونقول لماذا يجب علينا أن نفتخر ببلدنا الجميلة.

Here are some ideas: يوجد بعض الأفكار:

The food: الطعام:



Our food can be described with one word: wonderful! Maybe the most famous is Ful Medames, beans cooked very slowly, served with lots of olive oil and garlic.
Maybe you want something sweet? How about Basbousa, a thin, sweet semolina cake with syrup.

يمكن وصف طعامنا بكلمة واحدة: رائع!
ربما أشهر أطعمتنا الفول المدمس، وهو فول مطبوخ ببطء شديد، ويقدم مع الكثير من زيت الزيتون والثوم. ربما تريد بعضًا من الحلويات. ماذا عن البسبوسة؟ كيكة رقيقة من السميد مع شراب السكر.

The people: الناس:



More than half of Egyptians are under the age of 30. This means we are full of energy. We are helpful to each other and we are very friendly to visitors. We are very hospitable people.

أكثر من نصف عدد المصريين تحت سن الثلاثين. وهذا يعنى أننا مليئون بالطاقة. نحن نساعد بعضنا، كما أننا ودودون جدًّا مع الزائرين. نحن شعب مضياف.

Nature: الطبيعة:



Many people think that Egypt is only a desert. It's true that about 90% of Egypt is desert, but we also have green lands.
Near the Nile it is green and beautiful. There are mountains in the south and east. It even snows in the Sinai region.

يعتقد العديد من الناس أن مصر صحراء فقط. صحيح أن حوالى 90% من مصر صحراء ولكن لدينا أيضًا أراضٍ خضراء. بالقرب من النيل الأراضى خضراء وجميلة. هناك جبال فى الجنوب والشرق وتمطر جليدًا أحيانًا فى منطقة سيناء.

Culture: الثقافة:



We make a lot of movies and many of them are famous. We have authors who won important prizes. And of course, we love sports! Anyone who loves karate knows the name of one very famous karate player, Ferial Abdelaziz.

نحن نقوم بصناعة الكثير من الأفلام والعديد منها مشهور. كما أن لدينا مؤلفين فازوا بجوائز هامة. وبالطبع نحن نحب الرياضة. أى شخص يحب الكاراتيه يعرف اسم واحدة من أشهر لاعبى الكاراتيه (فريال عبد العزيز).

Definitions

special	having something different or that nobody else has امتلاك شىء مختلف أو شىء لا يمتلكه أى شخص آخر
hospitable	friendly and welcoming to visitors ودود وكريم مع الزوار
serve	give food or drink to people أن تعطى الطعام أو الشراب للناس
celebrate	to feel proud of أن تشعر بالفخر
region	a part of a country جزء من بلد
authors	people who write movies and stories الأشخاص الذين يكتبون الأفلام والقصص

Check

Choose the correct answer:

1. Egypt is famous for its (building – jobs – cities – history).
2. Ful Medames is (wrote – drank – served – played) with lots of olive oil and garlic.
3. Basbousa is a thin, sweet semolina cake with (syrup – water – juice – cola).
4. It even (shines – rains – wins – snows) in the Sinai region.



Making adjectives تكوين الصفات

Form:

We can make an adjective by adding (-ful) to the end of a verb or noun.

يمكن تكوين الصفة بإضافة اللاحقة (ful -) إلى نهاية الاسم أو الفعل.

noun or verb + (-ful) = adjective

care	يعتنى	→ careful	حريص	pain	ألم	→ painful	مؤلم
help	يساعد	→ helpful	متعاون	wonder	يتعجب	→ wonderful	رائع
use	يستخدم	→ useful	مفيد	color	لون	→ colorful	ملون
beauty	جمال	→ beautiful	جميل				



I hurt my arm. It is painful.

لقد جرحت ذراعى. إنه مؤلم.



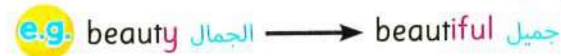
Ahmed is helpful.

أحمد متعاون.



When a noun ends in (y), replace it with (i) when adding (-ful).

عندما ينتهى الاسم بحرف (y)، استبدل حرف (y) بـ (i) عند إضافة (ful-).



Check

Choose the correct answer:

1 Dalia's dress is very (useful – careful – helpful – beautiful). We all love it. الجيزة - حدائق أكتوبر 2024
2 The food in Egypt is (bad – awful – terrible – wonderful). الجيزة 2024
3 She bought a (useful – painful – colorful – helpful) dress! It has many colors. الشرقية إدارة الإبراهيمية 2024
4 Mona helps many people. She is really (painful – careful – useful – helpful). دقهلية - ميت غمر 2024
5 I hurt my leg. It is (good – nice – high – painful). الشرقية 2024
6 Try to be (painful – colorful – useful – careful) when you carry heavy things.



Lesson 3



• Remembering • Understanding • Applying • Analyzing • Evaluating • Creating

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

(للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)

1 Many people think that Egypt is only a ....
a) school b) city c) desert d) village

2 Near the Nile, it is .... and beautiful.
a) green b) black c) blue d) red

3 There are .... in the south and east.
a) seas b) mountains c) clouds d) rivers

4 It even snows in the .... region.
a) Cairo b) Alexandria c) Aswan d) Sinai

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 I'm ....; I have a lot of money. الفيوم 2024
a) hungry b) sad c) poor d) rich

2 Egyptian people are .... and friendly to visitors. دمياط 2024
a) unhelpful b) hospitable c) painful d) bad

3 Basbousa is a very .... dessert. القاهرة – إدارة القاهرة الجديدة 2024
a) sweet b) salty c) cold d) hot

4 I have .... for breakfast. الشرقية 2024
a) pens b) toy c) Ful Medames d) books

5 Egypt is very .... for its history. القاهرة – إدارة السلام 2024
a) bad b) good c) famous d) proud

6 A/An .... writes movies and stories.
a) player b) author c) visitor d) Egyptian

7 We should be .... of our beautiful country. القاهرة – إدارة مدينة نصر 2024
a) plane b) pain c) cloud d) proud

8 I am very .... when I go online. القليوبية – إدارة شبرا الخيمة 2024
a) careful b) beautiful c) painful d) useful

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

serve – delicious – unhealthy – Medames – beans

الدقهلية 2024

Egypt is famous for its rich culture and delicious dishes. Ful ....(1)............... is a famous Egyptian dish. Egyptian people ate it thousands of years ago. It's ....(2)............... cooked slowly. You can ....(3)........... it with olive oil and garlic. It's very ....(4)........... .

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

الشرقية - فاقوس 2024

Egypt is famous for its history. We should feel proud of our country. We should celebrate its rich culture. Egyptian people are friendly and helpful. There are many good places to visit in Egypt. In Egypt, we celebrate many festivals. Eid Al-Fitr is one of these festivals. It comes after the month of Ramadan. People bake kahk in Eid Al-Fitr. Kahk is delicious cookies.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 Egypt is famous for its ....

a) celebrate b) festivals c) movies d) history

2 Egyptian people are ....

a) young b) old c) friendly d) bad

B Answer the following questions:

3 What is kahk?

....

4 When does Eid Al-Fitr come?

....

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1 She has a .... (color) dress. الفيوم - إدارة إطسا 2024

2 Tamer helps his mom. He is .... (helping). بورسعيد 2024

3 Egypt is a .... (wonder) country. الجيزة 2024

4 Can you .... (helpful) me, please? القليوبية - إدارة العبور 2024

5 Milk and cheese are very .... (use) for your teeth. بني سويف - إدارة اهناسيا 2024

6 Some computer games can be .... (help). الجيزة 2024

7 Be .... (care) on the road. الجيزة 2024

8 Alia's dress is .... (wonder). We all love it! الشرقية - إدارة بلبيس 2024

9 This fruit is a .... (use) food. بني سويف 2024

10 I have a toothache. It's .... (pain). الدقهلية - إدارة بلقاس 2024

11 I have some .... (beauty) flowers. الجيزة 2024

12 I am very .... (care) when I go online. الشرقية 2024

13 There are many .... (color) flowers in the garden. القاهرة 2024

14 The boat trip was .... (wonder). أسيوط - إدارة منفلوط 2024

15 My teacher is very .... (help). الجيزة - إدارة أبو النمرس 2024

6 Punctuate the following:

1 Many people think that egypt is only a desert

....

2 Maryam s dress is beautiful الجيزة 2024

....

3 what's the most famous food in Egypt القاهرة - إدارة السلام 2024

....

4 egyptians are known for their culture and friendly smiles دمياط 2024

....



Lessons 4 & 5

Writing & Project





1. Listen and say: استمع وقل:



Main vocabulary

birthday party	حفلة عيد ميلاد	information	معلومات
invitation	دعوة	address	عنوان

Extra vocabulary

missing (adj.)	مفقود	road	طريق
dear (adj.)	عزيزى	whole	كل
party games	الألعاب الجماعية	library	مكتبة
guests	ضيوف	class celebration	احتفال صفى
sports day	يوم رياضى	school yard	ساحة المدرسة
T-shirt	تيشرت	shorts	شورت

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعــال منتظمـة

Present		Past	Present		Past
imagine	يتخيل	imagined	invite	يدعـو	invited
remember	يتذكر	remembered	hope	يأمل	hoped
decorate	يزين	decorated	prepare	يجهز	prepared

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
come	يأتى	came	have	يملك	had
wear	يرتدى	wore	bring	يحضر	brought

Expressions and Phrases

make a list	يعد قائمة	RSVP	من فضلك أرسل ردًّا
see you then	أراك لاحقًا	have a party	يقيم حفلة
something blue	شىء ما باللون الأزرق	It'll be fun!	سيكون الأمر ممتعًا!
agree on	يتفق على	Be ready to	كن مستعدًا لـ ...
lots of	الكثير من	have fun	يستمتع

A Writing

2. Look and read: انظر واقرأ:

Dear ____________

I'm having a ____________ party next Thursday at my house. Can you come? I'm inviting the whole class so all our friends will be there. I want to play some party games so bring some music so we can play Musical chairs.

When: Thursday, August 12th

What time? 3 pm – 5 pm

Where: 12 Dene Road (my house!) (next to the library)

What to wear? Something blue

RSVP: 9768 324 590

I hope you can come.

How to write an invitation
كيفية كتابة دعوة

Why are you having the party? لماذا تقيم الحفلة؟

e.g. (birthday party - wedding party - class party - festival)

Where is the party? أين الحفلة؟

e.g. 12 Dene Road (my house!) (next to the library)

When is the party? متى الحفلة؟

e.g. Thursday, August 12th / 3 pm – 5 pm

Do you want guests to bring anything?
هل تريد من الضيوف إحضار أي شيء؟

e.g. Bring some music so we can play Musical chairs.

Do you want to know how many people are coming?
هل تريد أن تعرف عدد الأشخاص القادمين؟

e.g. RSVP: 9768 324 590



Find out!

RSVP is taken from the French phrase *Répondez s'il vous plait* and it means "Please respond" to confirm an invitation. It is a formal language.

مأخوذة من عبارة فرنسية تعنى يرجى الرد «RSVP» لتأكيد الدعوة وهى لغة رسمية.







3. Read and notice: اقرأ ولاحظ:

Prepare for a class celebration خطط لاحتفال الصف

1. What are you celebrating? ما الذى تحتفل به؟	2. What food and drink do you want? ما هو الطعام والشراب الذى تريده؟	3. What games do you want to play? ما هى الألعاب التى تريد أن تلعبها؟	4. Who is going to prepare the food? من الذى سيقوم بإعداد الطعام؟	5. What do you want guests to wear? ماذا تريد أن يرتديه الضيوف؟



What do you want guests to wear?

What are you celebrating?

Our Class's Sports Day



Where: In the school yard

When: Tuesday, 10 am – 11 am

What to wear: T-shirt and shorts

Please bring: Water and lots of cake!

Be ready to: play lots of games, have fun, and eat lots of cake!

What food and drink do you want?

What games do you want to play?



Lessons 4 & 5



• Remembering • Understanding • Applying • Analyzing • Evaluating • Creating

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 Mazen sent me a/an .... to his birthday party. الإسكندرية 2024

a) invitation b) transportation c) celebration d) decoration

2 A lot of .... came to my birthday party and gave me presents.

a) guests b) money c) animals d) food

3 We wear T-shirts and .... when we play football.

a) dress b) shorts c) glasses d) hats

4 My book is .... I can't find it.

a) miss b) invitation c) missing d) information

5 When they have a celebration, they .... their class.

a) think b) imagine c) decorate d) wear

6 She made a/an .... of what she needed.

a) list b) guest c) celebration d) address

7 Remember to .... an orange hat at the party.

a) eat b) where c) drink d) wear

8 A: What .... is your party? B: At 5 pm.

a) day b) time c) food d) clothes

9 I always play with my friends in the school ....

a) class b) library c) office d) yard

10 I'm inviting the .... class to my birthday party. الجيزة 2024

a) role b) hole c) whole d) hall

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

party – road – celebrate – chairs – inviting

Dear Nadia,

I'm ....(1)............ you to my sister's wedding party next Friday. All my family and friends will be there to ....(2)............ . I want to play some ....(3)............ games. Bring some music, so we can play Musical ....(4)............ . The party will be at 12 Pyramids Street (my house!) next to the library.

3 Read the text and answer the questions:

بني سويف - إدارة اهناسيا 2024

Salma's birthday is in April. She is having a birthday party at the house. She will invite all her family members and friends to the party. Her friend wants to play some party games at the party. She will tell her friend Mona to bring some music so they can play Musical chairs. She'll tell all her friends to wear something pink. She will have fun with her friends. They will take a lot of photos.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 The general idea of the text is about Salma's .... party.

a) wedding b) birthday c) graduation d) school

2 Salma's birthday is in ....

a) April b) October c) May d) November

B Answer the following questions:

3 Where will the birthday party be?

....

4 What will Salma's friends wear?

....

4 Punctuate the following:

1 we played lots of games had fun, and ate lots of cake.

....

2 what games do you want to play

الشرقية - إدارة مشتول 2024

....

5 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements:

مجاب عنه صفحة 255

"A birthday party"

- When will it be?
- Who will you invite?
- How will you celebrate?

الجيزة - البدرشين 2024

....

....

....

....

Unit 9 REVIEW



يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من مراجعة أهم الأجزاء التى وردت بالوحدة.

Lesson (1)

Hide and seek	لعبة الغميضة	traditional	تقليدى
Musical chairs	لعبة الكراسى الموسيقية	Pass the parcel	لعبة نقل الطرود
play games	يلعب الألعاب	give presents	يعطى الهدايا
open presents	يفتح الهدايا	play music	تشغل الموسيقى
paper	ورق	winner	فائز
popular	مشهور	wrap presents	يغلف الهدايا
wide	واسع	get together	يجتمعون معًا
seeker	الباحث	wedding	زفاف

Lesson (2)

Cheese rolling	دحرجة الجبن	Kite festival	مهرجان الطائرة الورقية
Chinese New Year	عيد رأس السنة الصينية	La Tomatina	مهرجان الطماطم
festival	احتفال / عيد	hill	تل / هضبة
funny	مضحك	good luck	حظ سعيد
monsters	وحوش	weird	غريب
silly	سخيف	traditions	تقاليد
mud	طين	dragon	تنين
envelope	ظرف	messy	فوضوى

Lesson (3)

Ful Medames	فول مدمس	culture	ثقافة
basbousa	بسبوسة	wonderful	رائع
country	دولة / بلد	olive oil	زيت الزيتون
history	تاريخ	garlic	ثوم
rich	غنى	semolina	دقيق السميد
karate	كاراتيه	syrup	شراب السكر
ideas	أفكار	proud	فخور
energy	طاقة	sweet	حلو
hospitable	مضياف	authors	مؤلفون
prizes	جوائز	Sinai region	منطقة سيناء
visitors	زوار	friendly	ودود

Lessons (4 & 5)

information	معلومات	library	مكتبة
invitation	دعوة	guests	ضيوف
address	عنوان	celebration	احتفال
missing	مفقود	school yard	ساحة المدرسة
road	طريق	shorts	شورت
whole	كل	sports day	يوم رياضى

Language Focus

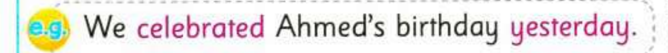
The Past Simple Tense

1) Regular verbs:

Subject (الفاعل) + (inf.) الفعل فى المصدر + (ed/d/ied) ... .

e.g. We celebrated Ahmed's birthday yesterday.

2) Irregular verbs:



Subject (الفاعل) + التصريف الثانى للفعل ... .

e.g. I won the race last year.

- Some irregular verbs:

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Irregular verbs أفعـــال غير منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past	Present	Past
see	saw	run	ran	fall	fell
win	won	fly	flew	give	gave
tell	told	have	had	say	said
throw	threw	wear	wore	buy	bought
make	made	forget	forgot	go	went
come	came	write	wrote	bring	brought





تأكد من حفظك لكلمات الدروس قبل البدء فى إجابة اختبار الوحدة.

Lesson 1

يعطى الهدايا	....	لعبة نقل الطرود	....
لعبة الغميضة	....	يلعب الألعاب	....
يغلف الهدايا	....	لعبة الكراسى الموسيقية	....
يفتح الهدايا	....	يشغل الموسيقى	....
زفاف	....	ورق	....
فائز	....	مشهور	....

Lesson 2

تقاليد	....	رائع	....
تل/ هضبة	....	فوضوى	....
غريب	....	الهند	....
ظرف	....	آسيا	....
طين	....	وحوش	....
حظ سعيد	....	تنين	....
مهرجان الطماطم	....	دحرجة الجبن	....
عيد رأس السنة الصينية	....	مهرجان الطائرة الورقية	....

Lesson 3

زيت الزيتون	....	بسبوسة	....
مؤلفون	....	مضياف	....
كاراتيه	....	فول مدمس	....
فخور	....	ثقافة	....
أفكار	....	مميز	....
طاقة	....	دولة/ بلد	....
جوائز	....	ثوم	....
منطقة سيناء	....	تاريخ	....
زوار	....	دقيق السميد	....
ودود	....	شراب السكر	....

Lessons 4 & 5

دعوة	....	عنوان	....
مكتبة	....	حفلة عيد ميلاد	....
ساحة المدرسة	....	ضيوف	....
تيشرت	....	احتفال	....
شورت	....	معلومات	....

WRITING TIME



لكى تتمكن من كتابة الموضوعات بشكل مميز، اتبع هذه الخطوات.

How to write about party games:

1. My favorite party game is + اسم اللعبة.
2. You need (people/ music/ presents) to play this game.
3. To play this game + خطوات لعب اللعبة.

"My favorite game"

My favorite party game is Hide and seek. You need people and a wide place to play this game. To play this game, the seeker closes his/her eyes and counts to ten. The other players hide. The seeker tries to find them. The last one left is the winner.

Writing about an unusual festival:

1. What is the name of the festival?
2. Where does it take place?
3. How do people celebrate it?

"La Tomatina"

My favorite festival is La Tomatina. It takes place in Spain. Everybody throws old tomatoes at each other. After a few minutes, everyone is covered in red. They do that for fun.

Writing an invitation:

1. Dear + اسم الشخص المدعو.
2. I'm inviting you to + اسم المناسبة.
3. It's on + تاريخ وموعد المناسبة.
4. It will be at + مكان المناسبة.
5. We will + أسماء الأنشطة.
6. You can wear + زى المناسبة.
7. I hope you can come.

"An invitation to my birthday party"

Dear Adel,

I'm inviting you to my birthday party. It's on Sunday, April 12th. The party will be at the City Park. We will play some party games and eat cakes. You can wear something blue. I hope you can come.

Ola



STUDENT'S BOOK CORNER

يتضمن هذا الجزء أهم الأسئلة التى وردت بكتاب الوزارة.

1 Correct the sentences:

1. Basbousa is very salty.

   ....

2. Egypt is full of old people.

   ....

3. About 90% of Egypt is green land.

   ....

4. Ferial Abdelaziz is a tennis player.

   ....

2 Write the past form of the verbs below.

see	....	give	....
push	....	ask	....
run	....	tell	....
fall	....	have	....
win	....	say	....

3 Complete the sentences with the adjectives:

wonderful – useful – colorful – helpful – beautiful

1. Alia's dress is .... We all love it!
2. Learning about Egypt is .... It has an amazing history!
3. Our school's cleaners are very .... They help keep our school clean.
4. Those tools are very .... for fixing our door.
5. That shirt has red, blue, and green stripes. It's very ....









1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:



(للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)

1 We make a lot of .... and many of them are famous.
a) games b) movies c) cakes d) foods

2 We have .... who won important prizes.
a) authors b) players c) students d) teachers

3 We love ....
a) sports b) movies c) books d) stories

4 Ferial Abdelaziz is a famous .... player.
a) football b) tennis c) basketball d) karate



2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:



1 In La Tomatina festival, everybody threw .... at each other. بني سويف - إدارة الواسطى 2024
a) potatoes b) onions c) tomatoes d) eggs

2 Heba .... the present to see what was inside. القاهرة - إدارة المطرية 2024
a) wrapped b) unwrapped c) played d) sent

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:



eyes – noses – hide – game – winner

الشرقية - إدارة كفر صقر 2024

Hide and seek is a very old and popular ....(1).......... . Many players can join in this exciting game. The seeker closes his or her ....(2).......... and counts to ten. The other players ....(3).......... . The seeker tries to find them. The first player the seeker finds becomes the next seeker. The last one left is the ....(4).......... .

4 Read the text and answer the questions:



الفيوم 2024

Last Friday, we went to the park. In the morning, Ali and Youssef played football. Lara and Laila rode their bikes. Salma flew her red kite. Eyad and Walid sang a song. In the afternoon, the children played "Hide and seek." Ali was the seeker. Salma was the last one left. She was the winner. We all had fun. We took some photos. We ate ice-cream, then we went back home at 6 o'clock.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 The children went to the ....

a) zoo b) park c) library d) museum

2 Salma's kite is ....

a) orange b) black c) white d) red

B Answer the following questions:

3 What did the children play in the afternoon?

....

4 When did the children go back home?

....

Writing

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets: 8

1 She .... (doesn't) watch television yesterday. القاهرة - إدارة الشرابية 2024

2 Naglaa's dress is .... (beauty). القليوبية - إدارة بنها 2024

3 Tamer helps his mom. He is .... (helping). بورسعيد - توجيه اللغة الإنجليزية 2024

4 I'm very .... (care) when I go online. القليوبية - إدارة شبين القناطر 2024

6 Punctuate the following: 2

egypt is famous for its history القليوبية - إدارة العبور 2024

....

7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements: 7

مجاب عنه صفحة 255

"My favorite party game"

- What is the game?
- Where do you play it?
- How do you play it?

القليوبية - إدارة العبور 2024

....

....

....

....

Assess your progress

< 50%	50 : 64%	65 : 84%	85 : 100%
Study again	Practice more	Solve more exams	Well done!





AL-AZHAR CORNER



تحتوى هذه الصفحة على أسئلة خاصة بمواصفات الأزهر.

1 Listen and choose the correct answer:

(للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)



1 Egypt is a .... country.
(small – short – big)

2 Egypt is famous for its ....
(jobs – cities – history)

3 We should be .... of our country.
(bored – proud – sad)

2 Choose the correct answer:

1 Hide and seek is a party (festival – game – celebration).

2 We (see – saw – seeing) Mr. Ahmed in town a few days ago.

3 They (build – builds – built) a new bridge over that river last year.

4 Ful Medames is (beans – semolina – cake) cooked very slowly and served with olive oil and garlic.

5 A/An (player – author – visitor) writes movies and stories.

3 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

1 often – games – play – The children.

....

2 are – Egyptians – friendly – very – visitors – to.

....

3 Egypt – Learning – is – about – wonderful.

....

4 party – I'm – a birthday – having – Thursday – next.

....

5 games – You – need – people – to play – party.

....

MARCH REVISION

يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من المراجعة على محتوى شهر مارس.

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 The Nile is the longest .... in the world. أسيوط - إدارة القوصية 2024

a) oasis b) forest c) desert d) river

2 My grandpa is a farmer. He lives in a ....

a) desert b) village c) city d) river

3 The mice live in .... الجيزة - إدارة العمرانية 2024

a) hotels b) holes c) schools d) rivers

4 The Nile has 2 .... in Egypt. الفيوم - 2024

a) centers b) branches c) mountains d) oases

5 I was very .... because I forgot my homework.

a) kind b) nervous c) happy d) quiet

6 The city is very busy and .... أسيوط - إدارة ديروط 2024

a) quiet b) calm c) noisy d) free

7 Can I have a .... of water, please?

a) slice b) piece c) bottle d) bar

8 People .... during Ramadan. They don't eat or drink until sunset. القاهرة - إدارة القاهرة الجديدة 2024

a) plane b) represent c) sleep d) fast

9 .... is a month when Muslims fast.

a) Shawwal b) October c) January d) Ramadan

10 Kahk are delicious ....

a) cake b) cookies c) candies d) juice

11 My brother drank a .... of apple juice.

a) bar b) slice c) packet d) carton

12 We are eating .... of pizza. الجيزة 2024

a) bottles b) bars c) cups d) slices

13 Sham El-Nessim is a .... in Egypt. بني سويف - إدارة إهناسيا 2024

a) mosque b) month c) festival d) year

14 We can buy kahk from a .... الفيوم - إدارة إطسا 2024

a) library b) bank c) school d) bakery

15 In Hide and seek, the players .... and the seeker tries to find them. الإسماعيلية 2024

a) count b) hide c) run d) seek

16 Our food is .... I like it. القاهرة - إدارة حلوان 2024

a) bad b) awful c) helpful d) wonderful

17 Ali is very .... He helped me. الجيزة - إدارة الوراق 2024

a) colorful b) painful c) helpful d) careful

18 I like to fly .... القليوبية - إدارة العبور 2024

a) cheese b) hospital c) kites d) dessert

19 Egyptians are friendly to .... who come to see Egypt. الشرقية - إدارة الزقازيق 2024

a) festivals b) celebrations c) visitors d) hosts

20 .... means having something different. القاهرة - إدارة روض الفرج 2024

a) Painful b) Special c) Scary d) Boring

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

sad – pleased – bright – mice – seeds القاهرة - إدارة كوبرى القبة 2024

The city mouse visited the country mouse in the hole in the ground. The country mouse was ....(1)........... . He gave his friend grass and ....(2)........... . The city mouse said, "Thank you". You know, the city is pretty and full of ....(3)........... lights. The city mouse and the country mouse are two ....(4)........... .

nervous – gate – T-shirt – years – black الشرقية 2024

I remember my first day of school. I was seven ....(1)........... old. I put on a white ....(2)..........., gray pants, and ....(3)........... shoes. I was ....(4)........... . The teacher asked me to sit down. I studied science and math. It was fun. The next day, I wanted to go to school.

sunrise – sunset – fast – mosque – celebrate دمياط 2024

Eid Al-Fitr is a Muslim festival. The month before Eid is called Ramadan. In Ramadan, many Muslims ....(1)........... during the day. This means they don't eat or drink until ....(2)........... . People ....(3)........... Eid Al-Fitr in different ways. People say Eid Mubarak to their families and go to the ....(4)........... .

popular – place – winner – find – seeker الشرقية - إدارة القنايات 2024

Hide and seek is an old game. Players need a wide ....(1)......... to play it. One player, called the ....(2)......... closes his eyes and counts to ten. The seeker tries to ....(3)......... the other players who go to hide. The last one left is the ....(4)......... .

3 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1. What did Magdy .... (wore) yesterday? القليوبية - إدارة بنها 2024
2. What subject .... (do) you study yesterday?
3. We .... (play) football yesterday. الجيزة - إدارة بدرشين 2024
4. Ahmed .... (visit) his uncle last week. الفيوم - إدارة إطسا 2024
5. They didn't .... (went) to their school. الجيزة - إدارة الوراق 2024
6. Two years ago, we .... (have) a very special party. القاهرة - إدارة السلام 2024
7. He .... (isn't) hungry last night.
8. .... (Do) you go to school yesterday? الشرقية - إدارة ههيا 2024
9. My dad .... (be) forty in his last birthday. الجيزة - إدارة الهرم 2024
10. A: Did you ride a bike yesterday? B: No, I .... (don't).
11. He will buy a .... (bar) of juice.
12. My uncle .... (not come) early yesterday. القاهرة - إدارة الشرابية 2024
13. Rana .... (wear) a nice dress last night. الشرقية - إدارة ديرب نجم 2024
14. My grandma .... (lives) in a village when she was young. القاهرة - إدارة السلام 2024
15. He wants a .... (packet) of soap.
16. Naglaa's dress is .... (beauty). القليوبية - إدارة بنها 2024
17. She has a .... (color) dress. الفيوم - إدارة إطسا 2024
18. Ahmed helps his mom. He is .... (helping).
19. Alexandria is a .... (wonder) city.
20. She .... (leave) home early yesterday. القاهرة - إدارة الوايلى 2024

4 Punctuate the following:

1. ahmed visited his grandpa yesterday الفيوم 2024

....

2. what's the most famous food in Egypt القاهرة - إدارة السلام 2024

....

3. where did the country mouse live بورسعيد 2024

....

4. egypt is famous for its history الجيزة 2024

....

5. ali drank a bottle of water القليوبية - إدارة شبرا الخيمة 2024

....

6. Did you go to assuit last week أسيوط - إدارة القوصية 2024

....

Theme 4
I'm a responsible person
أنا شخص مسئول

Unit 10

I enjoy my life

أنا أستمتع بحياتى

Unit Objectives

- By the end of this unit, the student will be able to:
  - listen, read, research, and write about social media.
  - give advice with *should*.
  - learn and say words that start with un-.
  - read and listen to a short story.
  - write about the pros and cons of computer games.
  - research and make a leaflet.

- بنهاية هذه الوحدة، سيكون التلميذ قادرًا على أن:
  - يستمع ويقرأ ويبحث ويكتب عن وسائل التواصل الاجتماعى.
  - يعطى نصائح باستخدام «يجب».
  - يتعلم وينطق كلمات تبدأ بـ -un.
  - يقرأ ويستمع إلى قصة قصيرة.
  - يكتب عن إيجابيات وسلبيات ألعاب الكمبيوتر.
  - يبحث ويقوم بعمل منشور.

Did you know?

- The first call from a * cell phone was made in 1973. We check our cell phones about 150 times a day. I don't think it is healthy.

Find out!

- * Studies show that around 98.29 million Egyptians had cell phones by 2022; that's around 93.4% of Egypt's total * population in 2022.

* cell phone	هاتف خلوى (محمول)	* studies	دراسات	* population	عدد السكان



Lesson 1

An Interesting Research

بحث مثير للاهتمام





1. Listen, point, and say:

استمع، أشر، وقل:



Main vocabulary



message
يراسل/ رسالة



chat
يحادث/ محادثة



password
كلمة المرور



do research
يُجرى بحثًا



log in
يقوم بتسجيل الدخول



chameleon
حرباء



tablet
جهاز لوحى (تابلت)



website
موقع إلكترونى



cell phone
هاتف خلوى (محمول)



- لاحظ أن حرفى الـ (ch) ينطقان /tʃ/ (تش) فى (chat) / (research).
- لاحظ أن حرف الـ (g) ينطق /dʒ/ (دچ) كما فى (message).
- لاحظ أن حرفى الـ (ch) أحيانًا ينطقان /k/ (ك) فى (chameleon).
- لاحظ أن الحروف (tion) تُنطق /ʃən/ (شن) كما فى (information) / (presentation).

Extra vocabulary

interesting (adj.) شيق/ مثير للاهتمام	research بحث	library website موقع المكتبة الإلكترونى
place مكان	amazing (adj.) مذهل/ مدهش	presentation عرض تقديمى
respectful (adj.) محترم/ متسم بالاحترام	information معلومات	ideas أفكار

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعـــال منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
log into يقوم بتسجيل الدخول إلى	logged into	create ينشئ	created
change يغير	changed	message يراسل	messaged
chat يحادث	chatted	remember يتذكر	remembered
copy ينسخ	copied	plan يخطط	planned

Irregular verbs أفعـــال غير منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
do يفعل	did	get يحصل على	got
say يقول	said	know يعرف	knew
find يجد	found	write يكتب	wrote

Expressions and Phrases

create a password ينشئ كلمة مرور	get information يحصل على المعلومات
the same color as نفس لون	What else? ماذا أيضًا؟
all around فى كل مكان	chat with someone يحادث شخصا ما
make a presentation يقدم عرضًا	Write your own words. اكتب بأسلوبك الخاص.

Take care!

هناك بعض الكلمات من الممكن أن تستخدم كاسم أو فعل مثل (message) أو (chat):

	Noun (اسم)	Verb (فعل)
message	I sent my friend a message about the information. رسالة	I need to message Yara about the information. يراسل
chat	We had a chat to plan the presentation. دردشة	I chatted with Yara yesterday about homework. يدردش

Check

Choose the correct answer:

1 I logged into the school library to get some (food – friends – information – money).

2 I use the cell phone to (eat – chat – jump – find) with my friends.

3 I need to (feed – eat – copy – do) this page in my notebook.

4 I want to (chat – do – create – change) this shirt. It's not the right size.



2. Listen, read, and role-play: استمع، اقرأ وتبادل الأدوار:





Mom

What are you doing, Dalia?

ماذا تفعلين يا داليا؟







I'm doing my homework about chameleons. They're so interesting! I logged into this library website and I created a password to get information.

أنا أقوم بعمل واجبي المنزلي عن الحرابي. إنهم مثيرون للاهتمام للغاية! لقد قمت بتسجيل الدخول إلى موقع المكتبة الإلكتروني هذا وأنشأت كلمة مرور للحصول على المعلومات.



Mom

What does it say?

ماذا يقول؟







Chameleons change color. They are the same color as the place where they are.

الحرابي تغير لونها. يكونون بنفس لون المكان الذي يتواجدون فيه.



Wow! That's interesting! What else?

واو! هذا شيق! ماذا أيضًا؟



Dalia

They have amazing eyes and they can see all around. But I need to do more research. I want to message Yara and chat with her. She knows some great websites.

لديها عيـون مذهلـة ويمكنهـا رؤيـة كل شـىء مـن حولهـا. لكنـى بحاجـة إلـى إجـراء المزيـد مـن البحـث. أريد مراسـلة يـارا ومحادثتهـا. إنهـا تعـرف بعـض المواقـع الإلكترونيـة الرائعة.



Mom

Are you making a presentation about chameleons?

هل ستقدمين عرضًا عن الحرابى؟







Yes, I'm making a presentation with Yara. I need to look at lots of websites and find some nice pictures.

نعـم ، أنـا سـأقدم عرضًـا مـع يـارا. أحتـاج إلـى إلقـاء نظـرة علـى الكثيـر مـن المواقـع الإلكترونيـة والعثـور علـى بعـض الصـور الجميلـة.



Mom

Remember to be respectful. Don't copy information. Find ideas and write your own words.

تذكرى أن تتسمى بالاحترام. لا تنسخى المعلومات. اعثرى على أفكار واكتبى بأسلوبك الخاص بك.

Important sentences جمل هامة

* Dalia is doing her homework about chameleons. — أنا أقوم بعمل واجبى المنزلى عن الحرابى.
* Chameleons change color. — الحرابى تغير لونها.
* They have amazing eyes and they can see all around. — لديها عيون مذهلة ويمكنها رؤية كل شىء من حولها.
* Chameleons are so interesting! — إنهم مثيرون للاهتمام للغاية!



Lesson 1



• Remembering • Understanding • Applying • Analyzing • Evaluating • Creating

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

(للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب) محافظة بني سويف - إدارة ناصر 2024

1 The chameleon is a kind of ....
a) reptiles b) birds c) fish d) plants

2 Chameleons have amazing ....
a) legs b) eyes c) arms d) teeth

3 They can change their ....
a) shape b) size c) body d) color

4 They eat .... and leaves.
a) beans b) fish c) insects d) meat

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 I go to the .... to read books for my research. الشرقية 2024
a) shop b) museum c) library d) park

2 They need to create a .... to log into a school library.
a) password b) website c) message d) chat

3 A: Did you do your .... on your tablet? B: Yes, I did. الإسكندرية - المنتزه 2024
a) library b) research c) color d) dress

4 I sent a .... to my friend to help me. القليوبية - القناطر 2024
a) school b) color c) hospital d) message

5 I use my .... to do my homework online. الجيزة - توجيه اللغة الإنجليزية 2024
a) tablet b) pen c) book d) notebook

6 .... have amazing eyes and they can see all around. الجيزة - البدرشين 2024
a) Birds b) Chameleons c) Fish d) Lions

7 Chameleons change .... القاهرة - الزيتون 2024
a) food b) color c) money d) books

8 I logged .... the library website to find information. القاهرة - الشروق 2024
a) on b) at c) into d) to

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

message – found – tablet – chatted – felt

دمياط - فارسكور 2024

Last week, I had some homework. I worked with my friend Ramy. I sent him a ....(1)............ . My friend did research on his ....(2)......... . We ....(3)......... some information. We ....(4)......... to plan the presentation. The teacher liked our presentation.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

البحر الأحمر - الغردقة 2024

My name is Youssef. Yesterday, I stayed at home and watched an interesting program with my dad. It is about the reptiles. I was amazed when I saw the chameleons because they can change their color as the place where they are. I asked my dad to help me to log into safe websites. My dad showed me how to create a password to find any information and advised me to be respectful and don't copy them. I found many pictures and shared them with my friends.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 They watched a program about ....

a) plants b) oceans c) reptiles d) food

2 Youssef shared .... with his friends.

a) books b) pictures c) videos d) games

B Answer the following questions:

3 Why was Youssef amazed when he saw the chameleon?

....

4 What did his father advise him to do?

....

5 Punctuate the following:

1 i'm doing research about chameleons — الفيوم 2024

....

2 ali knows some great websites — شبين القناطر 2024

....

6 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements:

مجاب عنه صفحة 255

"Chameleons"

interesting – change color – amazing eyes

....

....

....

....





Lesson 2





A Staying Safe Online البقاء آمنًا على الإنترنت



1. Listen and say: استمع وقل:

Main vocabulary

safe (adj.)	آمن	social media	وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي	creative (adj.)	مبدع
personal information	معلومات شخصية	bullying	التنمر	adult	شخص بالغ

Extra vocabulary

online	عبر الإنترنت	devices	أجهزة	ideas	أفكار
thoughts	أفكار / آراء	pros	الإيجابيات	cons	السلبيات
interesting (adj.)	شيق/ مثير	scary (adj.)	مخيف	secret (adj.)	سر / سرى
strong (adj.)	قوى	stupid (adj.)	غبى	quickly	بسرعة
late (adj.)	متأخر	ugly (adj.)	بشع / قبيح	parents	الوالدين

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعـــال منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
share	يشارك	shared	talk	يتحدث	talked
contact	يتصل	contacted	tag	يضع علامة/ يشير إلى	tagged
bully	يتنمر	bullied	accept	يقبل	accepted

Irregular verbs أفعـــال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
learn	يتعلم	learnt/ learned	know	يعرف	knew
feel	يشعر	felt	keep	يحتفظ بـ	kept

Expressions and Phrases

share ideas/photos	يشارك الأفكار/الصور	have fun	يستمتع
make/be friends with	يكون صداقات مع	talk to	يتحدث إلى/ مع
tag (somebody) in photos	يشير إلى شخص فى صور	keep the password secret	يحتفظ بكلمة المرور سرًّا
turn off	يطفئ	check with	يتحقق من الأمر مع
online bullying	التنمر عبر الإنترنت	That's horrible!	هذا فظيع!
stop the bullying	يتوقف عن التنمر	say sorry	يعبر عن أسفه
feel much happier	يشعر بسعادة أكبر	That's really cool!	هذا حقًّا رائع!



Let's say it right!

- لاحظ أن الحروف (cial) تُنطق /ʃəl/ (شال) كما فى (social).
- لاحظ أن حرفى الـ (gh) لا ينطقان «silent» فى كلمة (thoughts).



2. Look and read: انظر واقرأ:



"Social media" is when we use computers and other devices to share ideas, thoughts, and information and have fun.

«وسائل التواصل الاجتماعى» هى عندما نستخدم أجهزة الكمبيوتر والأجهزة الأخرى لمشاركة الأفكار والآراء والمعلومات ونستمتع.



Pros of social media إيجابيات وسائل التواصل الاجتماعى

1



You can have fun.
يمكنك أن تستمتع بوقتك.

2



You can share photos.
يمكنك مشاركة الصور.

3



You can talk to friends and family.
يمكنك التحدث مع الأصدقاء والعائلة.

4



You can find information for your homework.
يمكنك العثور على معلومات لواجبك المنزلى.

5



You can be creative.
يمكنك أن تكون مبدعًا.

6



You can play games.
يمكنك لعب ألعاب.

7



You can learn interesting things.
يمكنك تعلم أشياء شيقة.

Cons of social media سلبيات وسائل التواصل الاجتماعى

1



People you don't know can contact you.

يمكن للأشخاص الذين لا تعرفهم الاتصال بك.

2



People can tag you in photos when you don't want them to.

يمكن للأشخاص الإشارة إليك فى الصور عندما لا تريدهم أن يفعلوا ذلك.

3



People can take your personal information.

يمكن للناس أن يأخذوا معلوماتك الشخصية.

4



Some people can bully you.

يمكن لبعض الأشخاص أن يتنمروا عليك.

Check

1 What is social media?

....

2 What are the cons of social media?

....



3. Look and notice: انظر ولاحظ:

You should keep your password secret.
يجب أن تبقى كلمة المرور الخاصة بك سرية.

You should accept to be friends only with people you know.
يجب أن تقبل أن تكون صديقًا فقط للأشخاص الذين تعرفهم.

You should keep your personal information secret.
يجب أن تحافظ على سرية معلوماتك الشخصية.













Safe



Online

البقاء آمنًا على الإنترنت









You should only give your phone number to your friends.
يجب أن تعطى رقم هاتفك لأصدقائك فقط.

You shouldn't use your phone late at night.
لا يجب لك استخدام هاتفك فى وقت متأخر من الليل.

You should turn your phone off at night.
يجب أن تغلق هاتفك فى الليل.

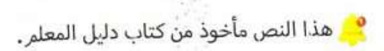
You should create strong passwords.
يجب أن تنشئ كلمات مرور قوية.

You should check with an adult.
يجب أن تتحقق مع شخص بالغ.

You should log into safe websites.
يجب أن تسجل الدخول إلى مواقع آمنة.

Online bullying التنمر عبر الإنترنت

Listening script page 61 SB







4. Listen, read, and role-play: استمع، اقرأ وتبادل الأدوار:



Magdy: Wael, you know I started at the new school?
وائل، هل تعلم أنى بدأت فى المدرسة الجديدة؟



Wael: Yes! Is it nice?
نعم! هل هى جيدة؟



Magdy: Yes, but I had a problem with online bullying. There was a boy in my class, Sherif, who was sending me messages.
نعم ، لكن لدى مشكلة مع التنمر عبر الإنترنت. كان هناك ولد فى صفى، شريف، كان يرسل لى رسائل.



Wael: What did he say?
ماذا قال؟



Magdy: He said I was stupid and no one liked me.
قال إننى غبى ولم يحبنى أحد.



Wael: That's horrible! Did you tell someone?
هذا فظيع! هل أخبرت أحدًا؟



Magdy: Yes, my dad. He went to the school and talked to my teacher. He showed my teacher the messages from Sherif.
نعم، أبى. ذهب إلى المدرسة وتحدث إلى معلمتى. وأطلع معلمتى على رسائل شريف.





Wael

What did your teacher do?

ماذا فعلت معلمتك؟



Magdy

She spoke to Sherif and Sherif's parents. They all stopped the bullying. They said I shouldn't talk to Sherif online.

تحدثت مع شريف ووالديه. لقد أوقفوا التنمر جميعًا.
قالوا إننى لا يجب أن أتحدث إلى شريف عبر الإنترنت.





Wael

And Sherif?

وشريف؟



Magdy

He said sorry to me. But I feel much happier now! I know what I should do about online bullying now – keep the messages and tell an adult quickly.

عبر عن أسفه لى. لكنى أشعر بسعادة أكبر الآن! أعرف
ما يجب علىَّ فعله الآن حيال التنمر عبر الإنترنت -
احتفظ بالرسائل وأخبر شخصًا بالغًا بسرعة.





Wael

That's really cool! When are you coming to see me?

هذا رائع حقًّا! متى سوف تأتى لترانى؟



Giving advice: إعطاء النصيحة:

Should:

We use "should" to talk about what we think is right to do.
نستخدم «يجب أن» للتحدث عما نعتقد أنه من الصحيح القيام به.

Subject (الفاعل) + should + inf. (الفعل فى المصدر) ....



I should turn my phone off at night.
يجب أن أطفئ هاتفى ليلًا.

Shouldn't:

We use "shouldn't" to talk about what we think is wrong to do.
نستخدم «يجب ألا» للتحدث عما نعتقد أنه من الخطأ القيام به.

Subject (الفاعل) + shouldn't + inf. (الفعل فى المصدر) ....



I shouldn't use my phone late at night.
يجب ألا أستخدم هاتفى فى وقت متأخر من الليل.

Check

Write (should / shouldn't) to complete the sentences:

1 You .... sleep in class.
2 We .... use safe websites.
3 If you are sick, you .... go to the doctor.
4 You .... share your personal information with anyone.
5 You .... keep your password secret.



Lesson 2



• Remembering • Understanding • Applying • Analyzing • Evaluating • Creating

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

(للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)

1. It's important to stay .... online.
   a) safe b) dangerous c) bad d) useless
2. You should keep your password ....
   a) sick b) secret c) happy d) sad
3. You .... keep your personal information secret.
   a) should b) can c) must d) shouldn't
4. You should .... to be friends only with people you know.
   a) share b) chat c) accept d) keep

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Sara is a .... girl. She always has good ideas.
   a) lazy b) sad c) creative d) stupid
2. I can .... my friends in photos online. بنى سويف 2024
   a) tag b) play c) study d) move
3. We use computers to .... information and have fun. الإبراهيمية 2024
   a) do b) share c) bully d) cut
4. Computers and phones are .... الجيزة 2024
   a) advice b) advise c) advised d) devices
5. I use .... media when I go online. القاهرة – الوايلى 2024
   a) book b) history c) social d) local
6. You must .... safe online. الفيوم – إطسا 2024
   a) play b) stay c) try d) do
7. To be safe online, you should create a strong ....
   a) website b) message c) password d) chat
8. Online .... is bad and you should talk to an adult. الجيزة 2024
   a) chatting b) messaging c) researching d) bullying

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

night – games – bully – homework – personal

محافظة الشرقية – منيا القمح 2024

When I'm online, I'm very careful, and I keep my password secret. I can talk to my friends. I should keep my ....(1)............ information secret. I can play ....(2)............ . I can find information for my ....(3)............ . I should turn my phone off at ....(4)......... .

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

الدقهلية - إدارة المنزلة 2024

Social media is when we use computers and other devices to share ideas, thoughts, and information. We can have fun, share photos, or talk to friends and family on social media. We can also find information for our homework and learn interesting things, too. On the other hand, there are some reasons why social media can be bad. People can take your personal information, and some people can bully you.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 The general idea of the text is about ....
a) bullying b) social media c) cell phones d) computer games

2 We can use social media to find ....
a) family b) fun c) information d) reasons

B Answer the following questions:

3 What is good about social media?

....

4 What is bad about social media?

....

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1 You should .... (creates) a password to log into the website.
2 We should .... (are) proud of our country. الجيزة 2024
3 You should .... (uses) social media safely. الجيزة - البدرشين 2024
4 You shouldn't .... (stayed) up late. القاهرة - السلام 2024
5 He shouldn't .... (tells) lies. القاهرة - الشروق 2024
6 You .... (shouldn't) use strong passwords. الجيزة 2024
7 Ali .... (shouldn't) eat healthy food. القاهرة - بدر 2024
8 I should .... (helping) my friends. الجيزة - الوراق 2024
9 You .... (shouldn't) be safe online. القاهرة - حدائق القبة 2024
10 Children shouldn't .... (eats) too many sweets. القاهرة - السلام 2024
11 Students should .... (studies) hard. القاهرة - روض الفرج 2024
12 We .... (shouldn't) clean our streets. بني سويف 2024

6 Punctuate the following:

1 you shouldn t speak to strangers. الجيزة 2024

....

2 people can take your personal information ميت غمر 2024

....



Lesson 3
Story





1. Listen and say: استمع وقل:



Main vocabulary

neighbor	جار	computer games	ألعاب الكمبيوتر
problem	مشكلة	unhealthy (adj.)	غير صحى

Extra vocabulary

restaurant	مطعم	son	ابن	other	آخر
apartment	شقة	together	معًا	lovely (adj.)	جميل/ رائع

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعــال منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
ask	يسأل	asked	answer	يجيب	answered
love	يحب	loved	stop	يتوقف عن	stopped
agree	يوافق	agreed	decide	يقرر	decided

Irregular verbs أفعــال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
meet	يقابل	met	know	يعرف	knew
say	يقول	said	find	يجد	found

Expressions and Phrases

What's the matter?	ما الأمر؟	go outside	يذهب للخارج
I don't know.	لا أعلم.	I agree.	أنا أوافقك الرأى.
That's a lovely idea.	هذه فكرة جميلة.	at the end of	فى نهاية الـ

Let's say it right!

- لاحظ أن حرفى الـ (gh) فى كلمة (neighbor) حروف صامتة (silent) لا تنطق.

Take care!

- بعض الكلمات متشابهة فى النطق لكنها تختلف فى المعنى والهجاء.

e.g. (son ابن) / (sun شمس)

- يمكنك إضافة البادئة "un" فى بداية الكلمة للحصول على عكس المعنى.

e.g.

healthy  صحى ✕ unhealthy  غير صحى

happy  سعيد ✕ unhappy   غير سعيد

How two neighbors helped each other

كيف ساعدت الجارتان كل منهما الأخرى



2. Look and read:

انظر واقرأ:



The Beginning

Hadeer met her neighbor, Rania, at the restaurant. Rania was sad.

التقت هدير بجارتها رانيا فى المطعم. كانت رانيا حزينة.

The Middle

Hadeer asked, "What's the matter, my friend?" Rania answered, "It's my children, Nancy and Nader. They love playing computer games. They don't do their homework. They don't go outside. I don't know what to do."
Hadeer said, "Yes, it is a problem. Tarek, my son, is the same. He often plays computer games. That's really unhealthy. Children should stop playing after one hour. They should do other things. They should play with their friends. They should go to the park." Raina said, "Yes, I agree."

سألت هدير: «ما الأمر يا صديقتى؟» أجابت رانيا: «إنهم أطفالى، نانسى ونادر. هما يحبان لعب ألعاب الكمبيوتر. هما لا يؤديان واجبهما المنزلى. هما لا يخرجان. أنا لا أعلم ماذا أفعل».
قالت هدير: «نعم، إنها مشكلة. طارق، ابنى، مثلهما. كثيرًا ما يلعب ألعاب الكمبيوتر. ذلك غير صحى حقًّا. ينبغى أن يتوقف الأطفال عن اللعب بعد ساعة. ينبغى عليهم أن يفعلوا أشياء أخرى. ينبغى عليهم أن يلعبوا مع أصدقائهم. ينبغى عليهم أن يذهبوا إلى الحديقة». قالت رانيا: «نعم، أنا أوافقك الرأى».

The End

Hadeer said, "Let's find games where they can play with friends. Tarek would love to play more with Nader. Can Nader come to our apartment? They can play together and have fun."
Rania said, "That's a lovely idea. And they can go to the park together. Thank you, Hadeer!"

قالت هدير: «لنجد ألعابًا حيث يمكنهم اللعب مع أصدقائهم. سيحب طارق أن يلعب أكثر مع نادر. هل يمكن أن يأتى نادر لشقتنا؟ بإمكانهما اللعب معًا والاستمتاع بوقتهما». قالت رانيا: «هذه فكرة جميلة. وبإمكانهما الذهاب للحديقة معًا. شكرًا لك يا هدير».

Check

1 Where did Hadeer meet Rania? ....

2 Why is Rania unhappy? ....




SB



Lesson 3



• Remembering • Understanding • Applying • Analyzing • Evaluating • Creating

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

(للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)

1 Amira's children love playing ....

a) tennis b) computer games c) football d) handball

2 They don't do their ....

a) sport b) housework c) homework d) shopping

3 Playing computer games for a long time is ....

a) healthy b) unhealthy c) good d) delicious

4 They should stop playing after .... hour(s).

a) one b) two c) three d) four

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 We live in a big ....

a) hospital b) school c) apartment d) restaurant

2 A: What is the .... ? B: I have a problem.

a) color b) matter c) time d) game

3 We can have lunch at the ....

a) website b) library c) restaurant d) hole

4 It's .... to play computer games for a long time. الشرقية – القنايات 2024

a) healthy b) unhealthy c) good d) perfect

5 They don't .... their homework.

a) do b) make c) go d) meet

6 I played .... with my cousins. الإسماعيلية – توجيه اللغة الإنجليزية 2024

a) presents b) jobs c) games d) homework

7 You should .... playing computer games after one hour.

a) use b) do c) stop d) agree

8 Children can play together and .... fun.

a) make b) know c) have d) meet

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

unhealthy – messages – online – healthy – angry

بورسعيد 2024

Kenzy is my cousin. She lives in the USA. She spends most of her time ....(1)............ searching for information for her homework, chatting with her friends, sending ....(2)............, playing games, and sharing photos. Her dad was ....(3)............ because it's ....(4)............ . He asked her to use the computer for 2 or 3 hours a day only.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

القاهرة 2024

Mona met her neighbor Sara at the restaurant. Sara was sad. Her children, Hoda and Ali, love playing computer games. They don't do their homework. They don't go outside. She doesn't know what to do. Mona has the same problem with her son. That's really unhealthy. Children should stop playing after one hour. They should play with their friends. They should go to the park.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 Sara is Mona's ....

a) neighbor b) child c) sister d) grandma

2 Sara's children love playing ....

a) football b) tennis c) basketball d) computer games

B Answer the following questions:

3 Where did Mona and Sara meet?

....

4 When should children stop playing computer games?

....

5 Punctuate the following:

i like to play computer games

بني سويف – إدارة ناصر 2024

....





Lessons 4 & 5

Writing & Project





1. Listen and say: استمع وقل:



Main vocabulary

pros	إيجابيات	cons	سلبيات	team	فريق
leaflet	منشور	bullying online	التنمر عن طريق الإنترنت	poster	ملصق

Extra vocabulary

reason	سبب	screen	شاشة	outside	بالخارج
problem	مشكلة	prize	جائزة	lives	حيوات (جمع حياة)
headings	عناوين	advice	نصيحة	website	موقع إلكترونى

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعـــال منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
solve	يحل	solved	interview	يحـاور	interviewed

Expressions and Phrases

bad for	سيئ لـ	good for	جيد لـ	make friends	يكون صداقات
at the end	فى النهاية	say/ think/ believe that	يعتقد بأن	in my opinion	فى رأيى
on the other hand	على الجانب الآخر	find out about	يتعرف على	look for help	يبحث عن المساعدة

Important sentences جمل هامة

"Pros and cons of computer games"

Pros (good things)	Cons (bad things)
* In some games, children need to solve problems. فى بعض الألعاب، يحتاج الأطفال إلى حل المشكلات. * Some computer games need teams, so children make friends and play with their family. تحتاج بعض ألعاب الكمبيوتر إلى فِرَق، لذلك يكوِّن الأطفال صداقات ويلعبون مع عائلاتهم. * Some computer games also help children think well. بعض ألعاب الكمبيوتر تساعد الأطفال أيضًا على التفكير بشكل جيد.	* Children can spend many hours on their computers and tablets. يمكن للأطفال قضاء ساعات طويلة على أجهزة الكمبيوتر والتابلت الخاصة بهم. * Children look at the screen and they don't go outside or do their homework. الأطفال ينظرون إلى الشاشة ولا يذهبون للخارج أو يؤدون واجباتهم المدرسية.

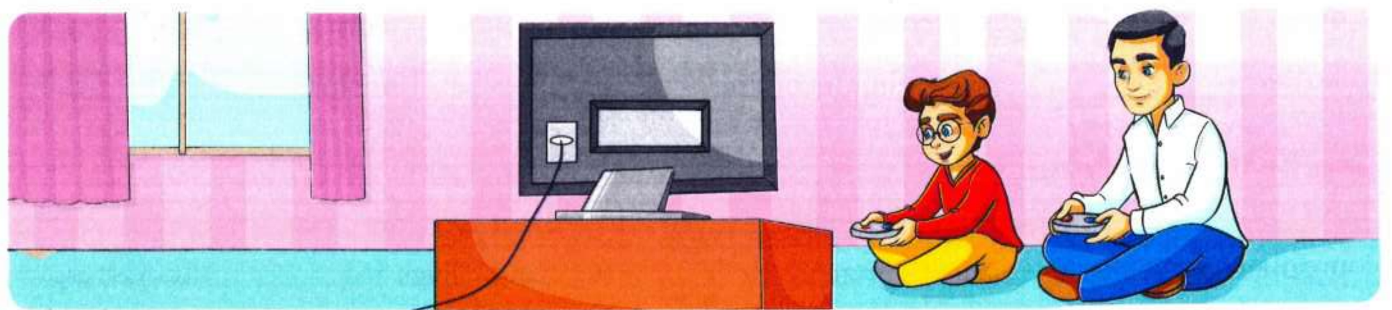


Writing

Pros and cons of computer games
إيجابيات وسلبيات ألعاب الكمبيوتر



2. Look and read: انظر واقرأ:



Paragraph 1 **Bad things about computer games** مساوئ ألعاب الكمبيوتر

Many people say that computer games are bad for children. Children can spend many hours on their computers and tablets. They look at the screen and they don't go outside or do their homework. Parents say this is not healthy for their children.

يقول كثير من الناس إن ألعاب الكمبيوتر ضارة للأطفال. يمكن للأطفال قضاء ساعات طويلة على أجهزة الكمبيوتر والتابلت الخاصة بهم. إنهم ينظرون إلى الشاشة ولا يذهبون للخارج أو يؤدون واجباتهم المدرسية. يقول الآباء إن هذا ليس صحيًّا لأطفالهم.

Paragraph 2 **Good things about computer games** إيجابيات ألعاب الكمبيوتر

But, on the other hand, there are some reasons why computer games are good for children. In some games, children need to solve problems. Some computer games need teams, so children make friends and play with their family.

ولكن، من ناحية أخرى ، هناك بعض الأسباب التى تجعل ألعاب الكمبيوتر مفيدة للأطفال. فى بعض الألعاب، يحتاج الأطفال إلى حل المشكلات. تحتاج بعض ألعاب الكمبيوتر إلى فِرَق، لذلك يكوِّن الأطفال صداقات ويلعبون مع عائلاتهم.

Paragraph 3 **My opinion** رأيى الشخصى

I really like computer games where I go outside. I go with my uncle and my friends. We like these games because you find a prize at the end. In my opinion, we can enjoy games, but we need to have other things in our lives like sports and time with our family.

أنا حقًّا أحب ألعاب الكمبيوتر التى أذهب فيها للخارج. أذهب مع عمى وأصدقائى. نحن نحب هذه الألعاب لأنك تجد جائزة فى النهاية. فى رأيى، يمكننا الاستمتاع بالألعاب، ولكننا بحاجة إلى أشياء أخرى فى حياتنا مثل الرياضة وقضاء الوقت مع عائلتنا.



- عند الكتابة عن موضوع يتضمن وجهات نظر مختلفة سلبية وإيجابية، فلابد من استخدام التعبيرات الآتية لعرض وجهات النظر المختلفة:

People say/ think/ believe that	للتعبير عن وجهة نظر عامة الناس
On the other hand	للتعبير عن وجهة نظر مختلفة عن عامة الناس
In my opinion	للتعبير عن وجهة نظر الكاتب الشخصية





3. Look and read: انظر واقرأ:

What is a leaflet?

It is a small flat or folded sheet with a printed shape on one or both sides. It is used to provide information in an interesting way.

إنه ورقة صغيرة مسطحة أو مطوية بها شكل مطبوع على أحد الجانبين أو كليهما. يتم استخدامها لتوفير المعلومات بطريقة شيقة.







Research
البحث

- Find out about bullying online.
  تعرف على التنمر عبر الإنترنت.
- Look for help online.
  ابحث عن المساعدة على الإنترنت.
- Search for information on the internet.
  ابحث عن المعلومات على شبكة الإنترنت.
- Find out which websites are safe.
  تعرف على المواقع الأمنة.
- Interview teachers.
  أجرى مقابلة مع المعلمين.

What to do
ماذا يجب أن أفعل

- Tell people about bullying online.
  أخبر الناس عن التنمر عبر الإنترنت.
- Give advice about bullying.
  قدم النصيحة بشأن التنمر.
- Tell students to stay safe online!
  أخبر الطلاب بالبقاء آمنين على الإنترنت!
- Give a presentation about being safe online.
  قم بإلقاء عرض تقديمى حول الأمان عبر الإنترنت.

What to do more
ماذا يجب أن أفعل أكثر

- Make posters or leaflets and put them around the school.
  اصنع ملصقات أو منشورات وقم بوضعها حول المدرسة.
- Talk to teachers and parents.
  تحدث مع المعلمين وأولياء الأمور.



Lessons 4&5



• Remembering • Understanding • Applying • Analyzing • Evaluating • Creating

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

(للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب) الشرقية - مشترك 2024

1 Many people say that computer games are bad for ....

a) sports b) plants c) children d) animals

2 Children can spend .... hours on their computers.

a) many b) few c) some d) a lot

3 In some games, children need to solve ....

a) homework b) problems c) mysteries d) math

4 Some computer games need ....

a) toys b) chairs c) teams d) classes

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 Using modern devices has .... and cons. الجيزة - منشأة القناطر 2024

a) pros b) books c) price d) prize

2 My brother is very good at .... problems. منيا القمح 2024

a) using b) solving c) playing d) reading

3 It's not healthy to look at the .... of the computer for long hours.

a) tablet b) keyboard c) mouse d) screen

4 Some computer games need teams, so children make ....

a) games b) time c) friends d) money

5 Children shouldn't .... many hours on their computers.

a) do b) solve c) spend d) sleep

6 I really like games where I can go .... and play.

a) inside b) teams c) sports d) outside

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

teams – correct – children – solve – games

القليوبية - إدارة غرب شبرا الخيمة 2024

Some people think that computer games are useful. There are some reasons why computer ....(1)............ are good for children. In some games, children need to ....(2)............ problems. Some computer games need ....(3)............, so children make friends and play with each other. Computer games also help ....(4)............ think well.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

القليوبية - بنها 2024

People say that computer games are bad for children. Children spend many hours on their computers or tablets. They look at the screen, and they don't go outside or do their homework. Parents say this is not healthy. But sometimes computer games are good for children because they need to solve problems in some games. Some computer games need teams, so children make friends and play with their family.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 .... means father and mother.

a) Parents b) Children c) Problems d) Games

2 Children make .... and play with their family.

a) cake b) friends c) bed d) food

B Answer the following questions:

3 Where do children spend many hours?

....

4 Why are computer games good for children?

....

5 Punctuate the following:

some computer games need teams

الشرقية - إدارة فاقوس 2024

....

6 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements:

مجاب عنه صفحة 255

"Computer games"

good for – solve problems – need teams

الجيزة - الوراق 2024

....

....

....

....

Unit 10 REVIEW



يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من مراجعة أهم الأجزاء التى وردت بالوحدة.

Lesson (1)

message	يراسل / رسالة	interesting	مثير للاهتمام / شيق
chat	يحادث/ محادثة	amazing	مدهش / مذهل
password	كلمة المرور	presentation	عرض تقديمي
chameleon	حرباء	respectful	محترم / متسم بالاحترام
website	موقع إلكترونى	log into	يقوم بتسجيل الدخول إلى
tablet	جهاز لوحى	information	معلومات
ideas	أفكار	copy	ينسخ
do research	يُجرى بحثًا	cell phone	هاتف خلوى (محمول)

Lesson (2)

safe	آمن	device	جهاز
personal information	معلومات شخصية	scary	مخيف
social media	وسائل التواصل الاجتماعى	secret	سر / سرى
creative	مبدع	late	متأخر
bullying	التنمر	ugly	بشع / قبيح
adult	شخص بالغ	pros	الإيجابيات
cons	السلبيات	stupid	غبى
ugly	قبيح	strong	قوى

Lesson (3)

neighbor	جار	son	ابن
problem	مشكلة	apartment	شقة
unhealthy	غير صحى	together	معًا
restaurant	مطعم	computer games	ألعاب الكمبيوتر

Lessons (4 & 5)

pros	إيجابيات	reason	سبب
cons	سلبيات	screen	شاشة
leaflet	منشور	prize	جائزة
poster	ملصق	advice	نصيحة
team	فريق	bullying online	التنمر عن طريق الإنترنت
lives	حيوات (جمع حياة)	headings	عناوين
outside	بالخارج	problem	مشكلة

Language Focus

Should:

We use "should" to talk about what we think is right to do.

Subject (الفاعل) + should + inf. (الفعل فى المصدر) ....





I should turn my phone off at night.

Shouldn't:

We use "shouldn't" to talk about what we think is wrong to do.

Subject (الفاعل) + shouldn't + inf. (الفعل فى المصدر) ....





I shouldn't use my phone late at night.





تأكد من حفظك لكلمات الدروس قبل البدء فى إجابة اختبار الوحدة.

Lesson 1

يراسل/ رسالة	....	يحادث/ محادثة	....
كلمة المرور	....	يجرى بحثًا	....
يقوم بتسجيل الدخول	....	حرباء	....
موقع إلكترونى	....	عرض تقديمى	....

Lesson 2

وسائل التواصل الاجتماعى	....	يتصل	....
بسرعة	....	آمن	....
أفكار/ آراء	....	التنمر	....
مبدع	....	مخيف	....
معلومات شخصية	....	أجهزة	....
الوالدين	....	غبى	....
شخص بالغ	....	بشع / قبيح	....

Lesson 3

ألعاب الكمبيوتر	....	مطعم	....
يوافق	....	جميل / رائع	....
جار	....	شقة	....
غير صحى	....	معًا	....
مشكلة	....	ابن	....

Lessons 4 & 5

سلبيات	....	جائزة	....
إيجابيات	....	حيوات (جمع حياة)	....
منشور	....	نصيحة	....
فريق	....	عناوين	....
بالخارج	....	التنمر عن طريق الإنترنت	....
شاشة	....	ملصق	....

WRITING TIME



لكى تتمكن من كتابة الموضوعات بشكل مميز، اتبع هذه الخطوات.

How to write about homework/ presentation about animals:

- I'm doing my homework/ presentation about + اسم الحيوان.
- They're so + صفة تميزهم.
- They can + قدرة لديهم.
- They have + شىء مميز يمتلكونه.

"Chameleons"

I'm doing my homework about chameleons. They're so interesting. They can change color. They have amazing eyes and they can see all around.

How to write about social media:

- Social media is when + تعريفها.
- We can + أنشطة يمكن فعلها .
- However, + مساوئ وسائل التواصل الاجتماعى.

"Social Media"

Social media is when we use computers and other devices to share ideas and thoughts. We can have fun, share photos, or talk to friends and family on social media. You can be creative too. However, people you don't know can contact you.

How to write about pros and cons of computer games:

- People say that + رأى الناس فى ألعاب الكمبيوتر.
- Children can + عيوب ألعاب الكمبيوتر.
- On the other hand, some computer games can be good because + مميزات ألعاب الكمبيوتر.
- In my opinion, + رأيى فى ألعاب الكمبيوتر.

"Pros and cons of computer games"

People say that computer games are bad for children. Children can spend many hours looking at the screen and they don't go outside or do homework.

On the other hand, some computer games can be good because they help children solve problems. In my opinion, I really like computer games where I go outside.

Unit 10 STUDENT'S BOOK CORNER

يتضمن هذا الجزء أهم الأسئلة التى وردت بكتاب الوزارة.

1 Look and complete the phrases:

opinion – the other hand – think/say

1 Many people ....
2 But, on ....
3 In my ....

2 Complete the text with the words in the box:

cell phone – chat – message – chameleons – found – password – logged

Last week, I had some homework about ....(1).......... . I ....(2).......... into a library website and created a ....(3).......... . I ....(4).......... information. I worked with my friend, Yara. I sent her a ....(5).......... about the information. We had a ....(6).......... to plan the presentation. She did research on her ....(7).......... because she can't use a tablet. Our teacher, Miss Lamia, loved our presentation! Hooray!

Dalia

3 Make sentences with should or shouldn't:

1 You .... have a very strong password.
2 You .... only speak to people you know online.
3 You .... speak to strangers on the internet.
4 You .... be an online bully.





UNIT 10





1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: 4

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة: (للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)

1 It's important to be .... online. القليوبية – القناطر 2024
a) nervous b) happy c) worried d) safe

2 You should keep your .... secret.
a) name b) computer c) password b) tablet

3 You should .... to be friends only with people you know.
a) accept b) wait c) hide d) call

4 You shouldn't .... your personal information.
a) contact b) share c) protect d) understand

Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: **اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:** 2

1 I should create a strong .... for my mobile. إدارة الواسطى 2024
a) photo b) password c) game d) tree

2 Social media has pros and .... القليوبية – بنها 2024
a) coins b) cans c) coats d) cons

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: 2

اقرأ وأكمل النص باستخدام الكلمات المساعدة:

number – water – friends – night – secret الدقهلية 2024

Nada likes the internet. She likes making ....(1).......... . Mom advises her that she should keep the password ....(2).......... . Nada always turns the phone off at ....(3).......... . We shouldn't tell everyone our phone ....(4).......... .

4 Read the text and answer the questions: **اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة:** 5

الفيوم 2024

My cousin Shady is 13 years old. He has an account on social media. He likes to share ideas, thoughts, information, and have fun. Shady is always careful when he is online. He accepts to be friends only with people he knows. He keeps his personal information secret. Shady can find information for his homework, so social media is "useful". Shady is creative because he learns interesting things online.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 Shady is .... years old.
a) 13 b)15 c) 18 d) 20

2 The word "useful" means ....
a) bad b) good c) tall d) weak

B Answer the following questions:

3 What does Shady like to do?

....

4 Why is social media useful for Shady?

....

Writing

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمات بين الأقواس:

8

1 You should .... (talking) to an adult if someone bullies you. بلبيس 2024

2 I should .... (helping) my friends. الجيزة – الوراق 2024

3 We .... (should) throw rubbish in the street. أسيوط 2024

4 You .... (shouldn't) eat healthy food. القليوبية – القناطر 2024

6 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتى:

2

i am making a presentation with mona. القاهرة – الشروق 2024

....

7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة من (18) كلمة مستخدمًا العناصر الآتية:

7

محافظة الشرقية – بلبيس 2024

مجاب عنه صفحة 256

"Social media"

have fun – share photos – strong password

....

....

....

....

Assess your progress

< 50%	50 : 64%	65 : 84%	85 : 100%
Study again	Practice more	Solve more exams	Well done!

Unit 10 AL-AZHAR CORNER

تحتوى هذه الصفحة على أسئلة خاصة بمواصفات الأزهر.



1 Listen and choose the correct answer:

(للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)

1 When you make a presentation, remember to be ....

(interesting – respectful – amazing)

2 Don't copy ....

(information – food – photos)

3 Find ideas and write your own ....

(websites – information – words)

2 Read and complete the dialogue:

stop – bullying – talked – horrible

Ali : I had a problem with online ....

Omar : That's .... ! Did you tell someone?

Ali : Yes, my dad. He .... to my teacher.

Omar : What did she do?

Ali : She told the boys to .... bullying.

3 Choose the correct answer:

1 We use the (radio – television – cell phone) to make calls. أزهر – القاهرة 2024

2 Marwan had a problem with online (bullying – playing – food).

3 You should (do – does – did) your homework.

4 Don't (eat – copy – do) information. Find ideas and write your own words.

5 You (should – shouldn't – are) be an online bully.

Unit 11 What can we do?

ماذا نستطيع أن نفعل؟



Unit Objectives

- **By the end of this unit, the student will be able to:**
  - listen, read, research, and write about transportation.
  - practice making sentences with "need" and "must".
  - learn about different transportation.
  - read and listen to a short story.
  - learn about and say words that begin with "tr" and "cr", and diphthongs ai, oa, and ea.
  - write about how to stop air pollution.
  - research and make a leaflet about road safety.

- **بنهاية هذه الوحدة، سيكون التلميذ قادرًا على أن:**
  - يستمع ويقرأ ويبحث ويكتب عن وسائل المواصلات.
  - يتدرب على تكوين جمل باستخدام «need» و «must».
  - يتعلم عن وسائل المواصلات المختلفة.
  - يقرأ ويستمع إلى قصة قصيرة.
  - يتعلم وينطق الكلمات التى تبدأ بـ "tr" و "cr"، والأصوات المركبة ai و oa و ea.
  - يكتب عن كيفية إيقاف تلوث الهواء.
  - يبحث ليقوم بتصميم منشور عن السلامة على الطرق.

Did you know?

- The Ghan in Australia is the longest passenger train in the world. It is about 774 meters long. The train has up to 44 *passenger carriages.

Find out!

- The Cairo Monorail in Egypt, will be the longest *monorail system in the world. We also have different public transportation in Egypt, such as trains, buses, and taxis.

* passenger carriages	عربات الركاب	* monorail	قطار كهربائى سريع (أحادى السكة)



Lesson 1





Means of transportation وسائل النقل والمواصلات



1. Listen, point, and say: استمع، أشر، وقل:



Main vocabulary





rail
سكة حديد



airport
مطار



bus
أتوبيس



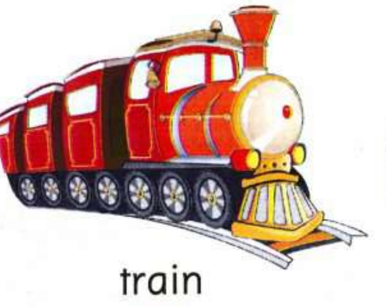
boat
مركب (قارب)



ship
سفينة



plane
طائرة



train
قطار



taxi
سيارة أجرة (تاكسى)



car
سيارة



metro
مترو الأنفاق



air
الهواء / الجو



water
مياه



road
طريق



Let's say it right!

لاحظ أن الحروف (tion) تُنطق /ʃən/ (شن) كما فى (transportation).

Extra vocabulary

means	وسائل / طرق	transportation	نقل / مواصلات	land	أرض
vehicle	مركبة	foot	قدم	quiz	اختبار قصير
public (adj.)	عام	cool (adj.)	رائع	late (adj.)	متأخر
town	مدينة صغيرة	far (adj.)	بعيد	Luxor	مدينة الأقصر

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعــال منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
travel	يسافر	traveled	interview	يجرى مقابلة	interviewed

Irregular verbs أفعــال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
go	يذهب	went	catch	يمسك / يلحق	caught
come	يأتى	came	meet	يقابل	met

Expressions and Phrases

go through	يمر عبر	on the water	على الماء
on the road	على الطريق	around the city	حول المدينة
on a rail	على سكة حديدية	do a quiz	يقوم باختبار
public transportation	وسائل المواصلات العامة	get to	يصل إلى
on foot	سيرًا على الأقدام	catch the bus	يلحق بالأتوبيس
take the bus	يستقل الأتوبيس	Have a nice day!	أتمنى لك يومًا سعيدًا!

Important sentences جمل هامة

* Seleem is doing a class quiz about public transportation.
سليم يقوم بعمل اختبار قصير فى الفصل حول وسائل المواصلات العامة.
* He comes to school on foot.
يأتى إلى المدرسة سيرًا على الأقدام.
* His friend comes by car with his dad.
صديقه يأتى بالسيارة مع والده.



e.g. take - catch

- بعض الكلمات يختلف معناها طبقًا للنص:

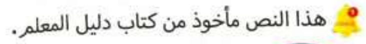
take an umbrella	يأخذ شمسية	take a bus	يستقل أتوبيسًا
catch a butterfly	يمسك فراشة	catch a bus	يلحق بالأتوبيس

Check

Choose the correct answer:

1. The plane is a (bird – car – vehicle – train). It can fly.
2. She was late. She couldn't (make – catch – read – need) the bus.
3. I like to travel by (train – boat – plane – bus). It's exciting to go through air.
4. Both trains and (cars – metros – planes – buses) go on rails.

Listening script page 71 SB





2. Listen, read, and role-play:

استمع، اقرأ وتبادل الأدوار:





Seleem

Hi Maged! I'm doing a class quiz about public transportation.

مرحبًا ماجد! أنا أقوم بعمل اختبار قصير فى الفصل حول وسائل المواصلات العامة.



Maged

Cool!

رائع!





Seleem

How do you get to school?

كيف تصل إلى المدرسة؟



Maged

I come to school on foot.

آتى إلى المدرسة سيرًا على الأقدام.



Seleem

Do you ever catch the bus or metro?

هل ركبت أتوبيسًا أو مترو الأنفاق من قبل؟



Maged

Only if I'm late. I like to come on foot so I can meet my friends.

فقط إذا تأخرت. أحب أن آتى سيرًا على الأقدام حتى أتمكن من مقابلة أصدقائى.





Seleem

Thanks! Ramy, how do you get to school?

شكرًا! رامى، كيف تذهب إلى المدرسة؟





Ramy

I come by car with my dad.
آتى بالسيارة مع والدى.



Seleem

Do you ever catch the bus or metro?
هل ركبت الأتوبيس أو مترو الأنفاق من قبل؟



Ramy

Yes, if my dad is not in town, I take the bus. I like it.
نعم، إذا لم يكن والدى فى المدينة ، فأنا أستقل الأتوبيس، أحبه.



Seleem

Why?
لماذا؟



Ramy

We travel slowly and I can see the city.
نسافر ببطء ويمكننى أن أرى المدينة.

Seleem

Do you ever come to school on foot?
هل سبق لك أن أتيت إلى المدرسة سيرًا على الأقدام؟



Ramy

No, my house is very far from the school.
لا ، بيتى بعيد جدًا عن المدرسة.



Seleem

Thanks! Have a nice day!
أشكرك! أتمنى لك يومًا سعيدًا!



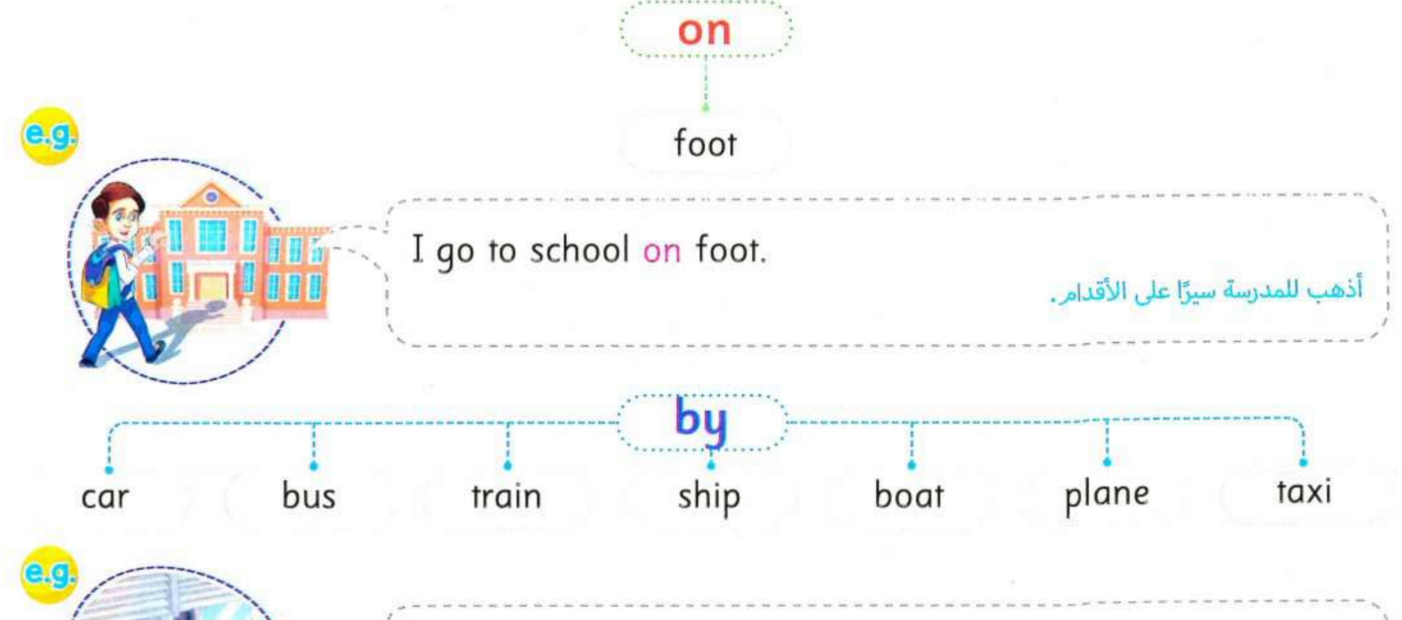
Ramy

You too!
وأنت أيضًا!



B Language Focus

Prepositions with means of transportation
حروف الجر مع وسائل النقل والمواصلات



on

foot

e.g.

I go to school on foot.

أذهب للمدرسة سيرًا على الأقدام.

by

car | bus | train | ship | boat | plane | taxi

e.g.



We travel to Aswan by train.

نسافر إلى أسوان بالقطار.



- When I travel by plane, I go through the air.
  عندما أسافر بالطائرة، أمر عبر الجو.
- When I travel by boat and ship, I am on the water.
  عندما أسافر بالقارب والسفينة، أكون على الماء.
- When I travel by bus and car, I am on the road.
  عندما أسافر بالأتوبيس والسيارة، أكون على الطريق.
- When I travel by train, I move on a rail under the vehicle.
  عندما أسافر بالقطار، أتحرك على سكة حديدية أسفل المركبة.

Check

Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1 I go to school .... (by) foot.
2 We travel .... (at) motorbike.
3 Trains move .... (in) a rail.
4 I love traveling with my family .... (on) plane.
5 I like traveling .... (in) bus when we are on the road.



Lesson 1



• Remembering • Understanding • Applying • Analyzing • Evaluating • Creating

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

(للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب) القليوبية – إدارة شرق شبرا التعليمية 2024

1. My favorite transportation is the ....
   a) boat b) plane c) car d) bike
2. I like watching the .... by boat.
   a) sea b) Nile c) lake d) waterfall
3. When you travel on a boat, you are on ....
   a) air b) home c) water d) land
4. The boat is a .... transportation.
   a) clean b) dirty c) sad d) bad

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. We travel on water by .... القليوبية – إدارة القناطر 2024
   a) ship b) train c) bus d) taxi
2. A: Which is your favorite ....? B: A train. القاهرة 2024
   a) game b) transportation c) subject d) book
3. I travel by .... I move on a rail under the vehicle. بني سويف 2024
   a) boat b) ship c) train d) foot
4. The .... travels through the air. الجيزة – إدارة الهرم 2024
   a) train b) car c) bus d) plane
5. We go to the .... to travel by plane. الجيزة – إدارة العمرانية 2024
   a) rail b) airport c) station d) water
6. When I travel by bus and ...., I am on the road. SB
   a) ship b) car c) boat d) plane
7. We go to school on foot. We always .... to school. الشرقية – إدارة مشتول التعليمية 2024
   a) cycle b) walk c) fly d) drive
8. Trains move on a/an .... الشرقية – إدارة مشتول التعليمية 2024
   a) road b) water c) air d) rail

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

roads – take – make – foot – rails

القاهرة – إدارة هليوبوليس التعليمية 2024

There are many types of transportation in my town. I live next to my school, so I often go there on ....(1)............ . When I go to the other side of the town, I ....(2)............ the bus. Buses move on ....(3)............ . When I travel to Cairo, I go by train. Trains move on ....(4)............ .

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

Seleem is doing a class quiz about public transportation. He asks his friends how they go to their schools. Maged lives near the school, so he goes to school on foot. Ramy goes by car with his dad. He only takes the bus when his dad isn't there. Nada likes to take the bus to school because it is where she can see the city. She never goes to school by metro.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 The general idea of the text is about ....

a) schools b) transportation c) quizzes d) friends

2 The underlined pronoun "it" refers to the ....

a) car b) taxi c) metro d) bus

B Answer the following questions:

3 Why does Maged go to school on foot?

....

4 How does Ramy go to school?

....

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1 I go to school .... (at) car. الجيزة - إدارة الهرم 2024

2 I go to school .... (by) foot. It is near my house. القاهرة - إدارة الوايلي 2024

3 I love traveling .... (by) water. الفيوم - إطسا 2024

4 When we travel by plane, we go .... (to) the air.

5 Trains move .... (in) rails. القليوبية - قها 2024

6 I love traveling with my family .... (on) plane. القليوبية - شبين القناطر 2024

7 My brother goes to the market .... (in) bus. الشرقية - إدارة ههيا 2024

8 Cars and buses move .... (under) the road. الجيزة - فيصل 2024

6 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements:

مجاب عنه صفحة 256

"Transportation"

love traveling – on the road – go to school by

....

....

....

....



Lesson 2





A Road Safety السلامة على الطرق



1. Listen and say: استمع وقل:



Main vocabulary

helmet خوذة	seat belt حزام أمان	road signs إشارات / لافتات الطريق

Extra vocabulary

road طريق	safety أمان / سلامة	safe (adj.) آمن
light ضوء	left يسار	right يمين
camel جمل	straight مستقيم	safely بأمان

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعـــال منتظمة

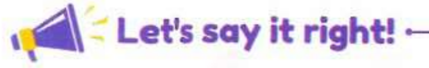
Present	Past	Present	Past
need يحتاج	needed	cross يعبر	crossed
turn ينعطف (يتجه)	turned	stop يتوقف	stopped
wait ينتظر	waited	park يركن (السيارة/ الدراجة)	parked

Irregular verbs أفعـــال غير منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
mean يقصد / يعني	meant	swim يسبح / يعوم	swam
show يظهر / يوضح	showed	ride يركب	rode

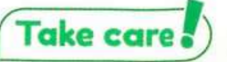
Expressions and Phrases

in danger في خطر	cross the road يعبر الطريق
go straight يتجه للأمام (يذهب مباشرة)	wait for ينتظر لأجل



Let's say it right!

لاحظ أن حرف الـ (gh) في كلمة (right) / (light) حروف صامتة (silent) لا تنطق.



Take care!

- بعض الكلمات يختلف معناها طبقًا للنص:



e.g. right – park

We play in the park. نلعب في الحديقة.	You can't park here. لا يمكنك الوقوف هنا.
You are right. أنت على حق.	Turn right. انعطف يمينًا.



2. Look, read, and notice: انظر، اقرأ ولاحظ

To be safe on the roads لكى تكون آمنًا على الطرق

1



You need a helmet on your bike.

أنت بحاجة إلى خوذة على دراجتك.

2



You need a seat belt in your car.

أنت بحاجة إلى حزام أمان فى سيارتك.

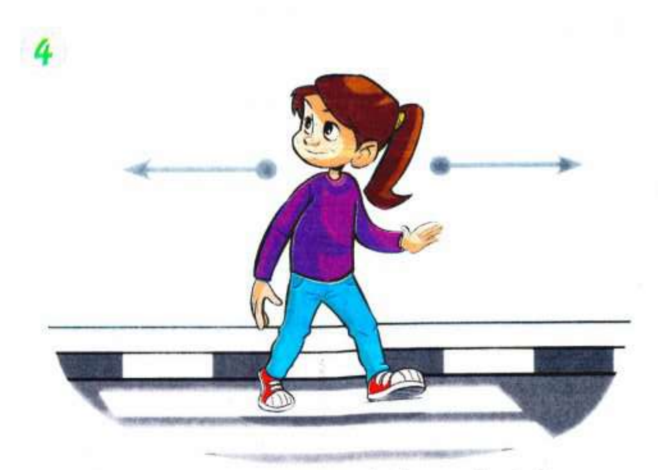
3



You need a green light to cross the road.

أنت بحاجة إلى ضوء أخضر لعبور الطريق.

4



You need to look left and right.

يجب عليك أن تنظر إلى اليسار واليمين.

Road signs إشارات الطريق

1



There are sometimes camels on the road.

توجد فى بعض الأحيان جمال على الطريق.

2

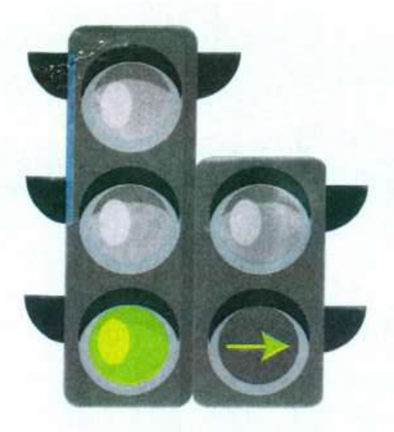


You can't swim here.

لا يمكنك السباحة هنا.



3



You can go straight and turn right.
يمكنك الذهاب مباشرة وتنعطف يمينًا.

4



Stop here and wait for a green light.
توقف هنا وانتظر الضوء الأخضر.

5



You can't ride your bike here.
لا يمكنك ركوب دراجتك هنا.

6



You can't park here.
لا يمكنك الوقوف هنا.

Check

Choose the correct answer:

1 You need a (belt – seat – helmet – road) on your bike.

2 You need a seat belt in your (train – car – boat – bike).

3 You need a/an (red – yellow – orange – green) light to cross the road.

4 We need a (safe – bad – dangerous – green) road.

5 You can't (cross – park – ride – need) your car here.



need

We use "need" when something is important or necessary.

نستخدم «يحتاج» عندما يكون هناك شيء مهم أو ضروري.

Subject (فاعل) + need/s + noun (اسم) ... .

e.g.



You need a helmet on your bike.

أنت بحاجة إلى خوذة على دراجتك.

We use "need to" and the infinitive (inf.) when something is important to do.

نستخدم «يحتاج إلى أن» وصيغة المصدر عندما يكون هناك شيء من المهم القيام به.

Subject (فاعل) + need/s to + (inf.) الفعل في المصدر ... .





You need to look left and right.

يجب عليك أن تنظر يسارًا ويمينًا.

Check

Choose the correct answer:

1 You need to (be – am – is – are) careful on the road.

2 You (has – need – doesn't need – should) a helmet on your bike.

3 I need (look – to look – looking – looked) left and right.

4 Ahmed (need – needs – needed – needing) a seat belt in his car.

5 We (needs to – needs – need – need to) safe roads.

6 She needs to (sleep – slept – sleeps – sleeping) early.



Lesson 2



• Remembering • Understanding • Applying • Analyzing • Evaluating • Creating

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

الدقهلية – إدارة شرق المنصورة 2024

1. It's important to be .... on the roads.
   a) angry b) exited c) unsafe d) safe
2. You need a seat belt in your ....
   a) home b) apartment c) car d) school
3. You can cross the road when the light is ....
   a) yellow b) green c) red d) black
4. You need to look left and right before you .... the road.
   a) cross b) sell c) describe d) build

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. You need to look left and .... الإسماعيلية – أبوصوير 2024
   a) write b) right c) night d) light
2. Naglaa only crosses the road when the .... is green.
   a) light b) night c) right d) road
3. My dad needs a .... in his car.
   a) helmet b) camel c) seat belt d) sign
4. Look at the ...., you can't swim here. دمياط – إدارة دمياط الجديدة 2024
   a) park b) sign c) letter d) book
5. You need a boat to .... the river.
   a) turn b) stop c) cross d) park
6. I need to wear a .... when I ride my bike. القاهرة – إدارة الشروق 2024
   a) shirt b) helmet c) jacket d) cap
7. You can go straight and then .... right.
   a) take b) need c) turn d) make
8. Stop here and wait .... the green light.
   a) for b) to c) of d) from

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

road – safe – left – light – red

الجيزة – إدارة العمرانية 2024

When you ride a bike, you need a helmet. You also need a seat belt in your car. You need a green ....(1)............ to cross the ....(2)............ . When you cross the road, you need to look ....(3)............ and right. We should be ....(4)............ on roads.

4 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1. Ali needs to .... (is) more careful on the road. الشرقية – إدارة منيا القمح 2024
2. We .... (need to) a green light to cross the road. الشرقية – إدارة بلبيس 2024
3. We need to .... (helping) everyone. بني سويف – إدارة الواسطى 2024
4. You .... (need) eat healthy food.
5. You need to .... (wearing) a seat belt in a car. الشرقية – إدارة الزقازيق 2024
6. She .... (need to) do more research.
7. You need .... (in) look left and right to cross the road. القاهرة – إدارة الشروق 2024
8. You .... (need to) a seat belt in your car. الشرقية – إدارة أبوكبير 2024
9. Do you need to .... (seeing) a doctor? الفيوم – إدارة طامية 2024
10. You need a helmet .... (by) your head. البحر الأحمر 2024

5 Punctuate the following:

1. you can t swim here.
....
2. my friend adham has a bike. الجيزة – الملك الصالح 2024
....
3. we need safe roads بني سويف – إدارة إهناسيا 2024
....

6 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements:

الشرقية – إدارة العاشر من رمضان 2024

مجاب عنه صفحة 256

"Road safety"

a helmet – green light – a seat belt

....
....
....
....





Lesson 3







1. Listen, point, and say: استمع، أشر، وقل:



Main vocabulary

careful (adj.)	حذر/ حريص	road	طريق
motorbike	دراجة بخارية	crosswalk	ممر مشاة
shocked (adj.)	مصدوم	ambulance	سيارة إسعاف

Extra vocabulary

kind (adj.)	لطيف / عطوف	a young man	شاب صغير السن	city	مدينة كبيرة
together	معًا	middle	منتصف	too fast	بسرعة شديدة
scared (adj.)	خائف	hospital	مستشفى	street	شارع

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعـــال منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
love	يحب	loved	walk	يمشى	walked
call	يستدعى/ يتصل بـ ...	called	follow	يتبع	followed

Irregular verbs أفعـــال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
drive	يقود	drove	fall	يسقط	fell
hurt	يجرح	hurt	learn	يتعلم	learnt

Expressions and Phrases

Be careful on the road!	انتبه على الطريق!	in a hurry	على عجلة من أمره (مستعجل)
walk into	يمشى فى	drive through	يقود عبر
fall over	يسقط أرضًا	call for	يستدعى / يطلب
feel very bad	يشعر بالسوء (بالذنب)	do wrong	يخطئ
do right	يفعل الصواب	listen for cars	ينتبه لأصوات السيارات



Let's say it right!

- لاحظ أن حرفى الـ (ed) أحيانا ينطقان /t/ (ت) كما فى (shocked).
- لاحظ أن حرف الـ (g) فى كلمة (sign) «silent» لا ينطق.





Be Careful On The Roads! كن حذرا على الطرق!

2. Look and read: انظر واقرأ:

The beginning





Mazen and Dalida are brother and sister. They love their school. Their teachers are very kind. Hani is a young man. He works in the city and he goes to work by motorbike. Today, he was in a hurry.

مازن و داليدا أخ وأخت. إنهما يحبان مدرستهما. معلموهما لطيفون جدًا. هانى شاب صغير السن. يعمل فى المدينة ويذهب إلى عمله بالدراجة البخارية. اليوم كان على عجلة من أمره.

The middle



Mazen and Dalida walk to school together. They cross the road at the crosswalk. Today, they walked to the crosswalk and waited for the cars to stop. Then they walked into the road.

Mazen walked to the middle of the crosswalk.
Then Hani drove through the crosswalk. He didn't stop because he was going too fast.

Mazen fell over. He was very shocked. Dalida was scared, but she wanted to help her brother.

يذهب مازن و داليدا إلى المدرسة معًا سيرًا على الأقدام. إنهما يعبران الطريق عبر ممر المشاة. اليوم، ذهبا إلى ممر المشاة وانتظرا حتى تتوقف السيارات، ثم مشيا فى الطريق. مشى مازن إلى منتصف ممر المشاة، ثم قاد هانى دراجته البخارية خلال ممر المشاة. لم يتوقف لأنه كان يقود مسرعًا للغاية. سقط مازن أرضًا. كان مصدومًا للغاية. كانت داليدا خائفة، ولكنها أرادت أن تساعد أخاها.

The end

Hani stopped to help. Mazen wanted to go to school, but he hurt his leg.
Hani called for an ambulance.
Mazen is now at the hospital with his mom and sister. Hani is feeling very bad.

توقف هانى ليقدم المساعدة. أراد مازن أن يذهب للمدرسة. ولكن ساقه كانت مصابة. طلب هانى الإسعاف. مازن حاليًّا فى المستشفى مع والدته وأخته. هانى يشعر بالسوء.

Check

1 How does Hani go to work? ....

2 Where is Mazen at the end of the story? SB ....





must

We use "must" or "mustn't" for strong advice.
نستخدم «must» أو «mustn't» لإعطاء نصيحة قوية.

Subject (فاعل) + must / mustn't + (inf.) الفعل في المصدر ... .

e.g.


You must wait for the green lights before you cross the road.
يجب أن تنتظر الضوء الأخضر قبل أن تعبر الطريق.

e.g.


You mustn't run on roads.
يجب ألا تجرى على الطريق.



When we take notes, we don't write the complete sentences. We write important words.

عندما نقوم بتدوين الملاحظات، لا نكتب جملًا كاملة. نكتب كلمات مهمة.



Note: listen for cars

Sentence: You must listen for cars.

Check

Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1 I .... (mustn't) listen to my teacher.
2 You must .... (follows) road signs.
3 You must .... (are) careful while crossing the road.
4 You .... (mustn't) wait for cars to stop before crossing the road.
5 You .... (must) eat in the library.
6 We must .... (finished) our work quickly.





3. Listen, point, and say:

استمع، أشر، وقل:





tr /tr/

truck

شاحنة

train

قطار

Diphthongs (long vowels)
الأصوات المركبة (حروف العلة الطويلة)

A diphthong is a vowel sound made by pronouncing two vowels quickly one after the other.

الصوت المركب هو صوت متحرك يتم إجراؤه عن طريق نطق حرفين متحركين بسرعة واحدًا تلو الآخر.



ai /eɪ/	rain مطر	snail حلزون	train قطار
oa /oʊ/	boat قارب	coat معطف	float تطفو
ea /i:/	clean ينظف/ نظيف	dream حلم / يحلم	sea بحر



Lesson 3



● Remembering ● Understanding ● Applying ● Analyzing ● Evaluating ● Creating

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

(الإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب) الجيزة – إدارة بولاق الدكرور 2024

1 Farida goes to school ....

a) by train b) by car c) by bus d) on foot

2 Farida's house is .... the school.

a) in b) near c) on d) far

3 Farida crosses the road at the ....

a) crosswalk b) park c) desert d) mountain

4 Farida never .... in the street.

a) eats b) cleans c) runs d) sleeps

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 When someone is hurt, we call for the .... أسيوط – إدارة ديروط 2024

a) train b) plane c) bike d) ambulance

2 Hani was in a .... because he was late for work.

a) road b) hurry c) snail d) dream

3 They cross the roads at the .... الدقهلية – إدارة غرب المنصورة 2024

a) online b) crosswalk c) message d) password

4 You can't .... your bike here.

a) dive b) drive c) ride d) go

5 She is .... She always looks left and right to cross the road.

a) helpful b) useful c) careful d) shocked

6 Stop here and wait for a .... light to cross the road.

a) red b) yellow c) green d) blue

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

ambulance – hurry – lights – crosswalk – motorbike

Ali is a young man who works in the city. One day, Ali was late for work so he was in a ....(1)............ . He drove his ....(2)............ fast. Omar and his sister Mona were walking to the ....(3)............ . Ali couldn't stop. Omar fell over and Ali called for an ....(4)............ to help him.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

Drivers and people who cross the roads should be careful. When we cross the roads, we should wait for the cars to stop. Yesterday, I walked with my friend Adel to school, then a man drove his car through the crosswalk. He didn't stop because he was going too fast. The man hit Adel and he fell over. He hurt his leg. I called for an ambulance and took Adel to the hospital. The man felt sorry.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 We should wait for the cars to ....

a) walk b) stop c) work d) run

2 The man drove his car through the crosswalk too ....

a) well b) slow c) fast d) happy

B Answer the following questions:

3 How did the man feel when Adel was in hospital?

....

4 What mistake did the man make?

....

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1 You must .... (follows) road signs. القليوبية – إدارة بنها 2024

2 You .... (must) run on roads. الجيزة – إدارة البدرشين 2024

3 You .... (mustn't) follow road signs. بنى سويف – إدارة الواسطى 2024

4 She mustn't .... (sleeps) very late.

5 You must .... (to cross) the road at the crosswalk. أسيوط – إدارة ديروط 2024

6 We must .... (wore) a seat belt in cars. الجيزة – إدارة الهرم 2024

6 Punctuate the following:

1 hani mustn't drive too fast

....

2 What must i do

....



Lesson 4



Air Pollution تلوث الهواء



1. Listen and say:

استمع وقل:



Main vocabulary

pollution	تلوث	chemicals	مواد كيمائية	dangerous (adj.)	خطير
electric buses	أتوبيسات كهربائية	rice straw	قش الأرز	photosynthesis	عملية البناء الضوئ

Extra vocabulary

dirty (adj.)	متسخ	London	لندن	England	إنجلترا
Shenzhen	شنسن (مدينة بالصين)	China	الصين	burning	حرق
crops	محاصيل زراعية	Paris	باريس	Copenhagen	كوبنهاجن
Denmark	الدانمارك	worried (adj.)	قلق	ideas	أفكار
subject	موضوع	son	ابن	asthma	مرض الربو
heating	جهاز التدفئة	solar power	الطاقة الشمسية	excellent (adj.)	ممتاز
renewable (adj.)	متجددة	growth	نمو	shade	ظل

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعــال منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
breathe	يتنفس	breathed	cough	يكح	coughed
stop	يتوقف	stopped	cycle	يركب الدراجة	cycled
cover	يغطى	covered	allow	يسمح	allowed

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
make	يصنع	made	put	يضع	put
drive	يقود سيارة	drove	buy	يشترى	bought

Expressions and Phrases

feel sick	يمرض	take a bus	يستقل الأتوبيس
First of all, ...	أولًا	cut the amount	يخفض مقدار (كمية)
a long way from	على مسافة بعيدة من	That's helpful!	هذا مفيد!





2. Look and read:

انظر واقرأ:



Cities have many cars. Cars make air pollution. They put chemicals into the air. We can't always see the chemicals, but they are dangerous.

Air pollution is very dangerous for us. When we breathe the polluted air, we cough and feel sick.

Does this happen to you in your city or town? Is the air dirty or clean?

المدن بها الكثير من السيارات. السيارات تسبب تلوث الهواء. يضعون المواد الكيميائية فى الهواء. لا يمكننا دائمًا رؤية المواد الكيميائية، لكنها خطيرة.
تلوث الهواء خطير جدا بالنسبة لنا. عندما نتنفس الهواء الملوث، نسعل ونشعر بالمرض. هل هذا يحدث لك فى مدينتك أو بلدتك؟ هل الهواء متسخ أم نظيف؟



Some cities are trying to stop the air pollution. In London, England, parents do not drive children to school. The children walk or cycle to school. Cars do not go near the school.

تحاول بعض المدن وقف تلوث الهواء. فى لندن، إنجلترا، الآباء لا يوصلون أطفالهم بالسيارة إلى المدرسة. يمشى الأطفال أو يذهبون إلى المدرسة بالدراجة. السيارات لا تقترب من المدرسة.



In Shenzhen, China, they have electric buses. These buses do not make air pollution.

فى شنسن، الصين، لديهم أتوبيسات كهربائية. هذه الأتوبيسات لا تسبب تلوث الهواء.



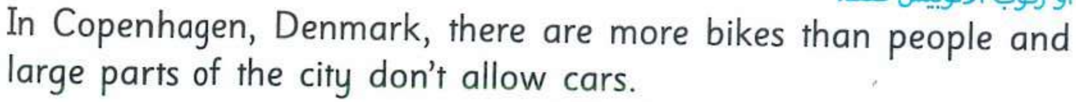
In Gharbia, Egypt, farmers wanted to have cleaner air.
To do that, they stopped burning rice straw. They used the straw to make food for their animals and cover their crops.

فى الغربية، مصر، أراد المزارعون الحصول على هواء أنظف. للقيام بذلك، توقفوا عن حرق قش الأرز. استخدموا القش لصنع طعام لحيواناتهم وتغطية محاصيلهم.



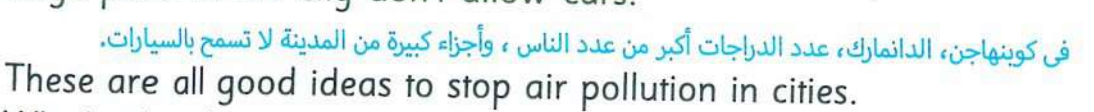
In Paris, France, cars can't go into some parts of the city.
In these places, you can only walk or take a bus.

فى باريس، فرنسا، لا يمكن للسيارات الذهاب إلى بعض أجزاء من المدينة. فى هذه الأماكن ، يمكنك المشى أو ركوب الأتوبيس فقط.



In Copenhagen, Denmark, there are more bikes than people and large parts of the city don't allow cars.





فى كوبنهاجن، الدانمارك، عدد الدراجات أكبر من عدد الناس ، وأجزاء كبيرة من المدينة لا تسمح بالسيارات.

These are all good ideas to stop air pollution in cities.
Which idea do you like best?



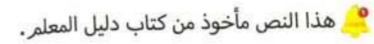
هذه كلها أفكار جيدة لوقف تلوث الهواء فى المدن. أى فكرة تفضلها أكثر؟

Check

1 Why is air pollution dangerous? SB ....

2 How did people in London stop air pollution? ....

Listening script page 79 





3. Listen, read, and role-play:

استمع، اقرأ وتبادل الأدوار:

Interviewer



Today I am talking to Doctor Helen Walker about air pollution. Helen, why are you worried about this subject?

أتحدث اليوم مع الدكتورة «هيلين واكر» عن تلوث الهواء. هيلين، لماذا أنتِ قلقة من هذا الموضوع؟







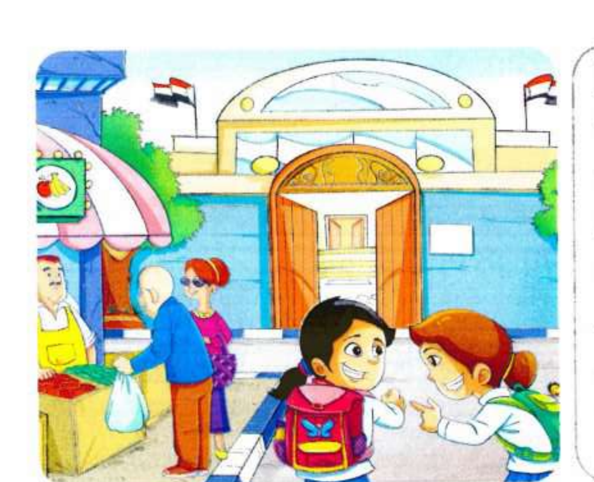
Because one of my sons has very bad asthma and I think it is because of the dirty air in our city. I wanted to say something to help him and other children.

لأن أحد أبنائى يعانى من الربو الشديد وأعتقد أنه بسبب الهواء الملوث فى مدينتنا. أردت أن أقول شيئًا ما لأساعده وأساعد الأطفال الآخرين.

Interviewer

What can we do to help make the air cleaner?

ماذا يمكننا أن نفعل للمساعدة فى جعل الهواء أنظف؟







I have some ideas. First of all, we need to cut the amount we use our cars. We can try to buy from stores near our house. Children can try to walk to school.

لدى بعض الأفكار. أولًا، نحتاج إلى خفض مقدار استخدامنا لسياراتنا. يمكننا محاولة الشراء من المتاجر القريبة من منزلنا. يمكن للأطفال محاولة المشى إلى المدرسة.

Interviewer

But sometimes children live a long way from school.

لكن فى بعض الأحيان يعيش الأطفال على مسافة بعيدة من المدرسة.



Helen



Then they could go by bike or maybe take the bus.

إذًا يمكنهم الذهاب بالدراجة أو ربما ركوب الأتوبيس.



Good idea, many schools have buses. What are your other ideas?

فكرة جيدة، العديد من المدارس لديها أتوبيسات. ما هى أفكارك الأخرى؟







Try not to have open fires at home. If it's cold, use the heating. And use renewable energy if you can, like solar power – renewable energy keeps the air clean!

حاول ألا يكون لديك مدفأة مكشوفة فى المنزل. إذا كان الجو باردًا، استخدم جهاز التدفئة. واستخدم الطاقة المتجددة إذا استطعت، مثل الطاقة الشمسية - الطاقة المتجددة تحافظ على نظافة الهواء!

Interviewer

Oh, that's helpful. What about more trees?

أوه، هذا مفيد. ماذا عن المزيد من الأشجار؟







Yes, that's an excellent idea. We need to plant trees. Trees clean the air because they use the chemicals for their growth through photosynthesis. They also make cities look pretty and give us shade on a hot day!

نعم، هذه فكرة ممتازة. نحن بحاجة لزراعة الأشجار. تقوم الأشجار بتنظيف الهواء لأنها تستخدم المواد الكيميائية لنموها من خلال عملية البناء الضوئى. كما أنها تجعل المدن تبدو جميلة وتمنحنا الظل فى يوم حار!



Lesson 4



• Remembering • Understanding • Applying • Analyzing • Evaluating • Creating

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: دمياط - إدارة الروضة 2024

1. When we breathe polluted air, we .... and feel sick.
   a) sleep b) laugh c) cough d) see
2. Air pollution is .... for us.
   a) good b) healthy c) helpful d) dangerous
3. Dad goes to work with his .... in the same car.
   a) mom b) friend c) grandpa d) sister
4. I .... to school.
   a) walk b) run c) cycle d) drive

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Buses make air pollution. They put .... into the air. دمياط - إدارة فارسكور 2024
   a) water b) woods c) stars d) chemicals
2. Air pollution is very .... الفيوم - يوسف الصديق 2024
   a) good b) healthy c) dangerous d) useful
3. Cars can make .... pollution. الجيزة - إدارة الدقي 2024
   a) water b) air c) soil d) sea
4. We need to use more renewable energy, like .... power.
   a) gas b) electric c) solar d) chemicals
5. .... cars are excellent because they work with electricity.
   a) Gas b) Solar c) Electric d) Fire
6. Ali has .... because of the dirty air.
   a) straw b) asthma c) shade d) heating
7. Air pollution is very .... الجيزة - إدارة فيصل 2024
   a) good b) nice c) clean d) dangerous
8. Farmers used the straw to make food for their animals and cover their.................... .
   a) crops b) toys c) ideas d) bikes

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

energy – bike – polluted – electric – pollution

Air pollution is dangerous. When we breathe ....(1)............ air, we cough and feel sick. Here are some ideas that can help us stop air ....(2)............ . You can go to school by ....(3)............ or the bus. We can plant more trees and use renewable ....(4)............ like solar power.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

الجيزة – إدارة 6 أكتوبر 2024

Cities have many cars. Cars cause air pollution. They put chemicals into the air. The chemicals are very dangerous. Some cities try to stop air pollution. In London, parents don't drive children to schools. Children walk or cycle to schools. In China, they use electric cars to stop air pollution. In Gharbia, Egypt, farmers stopped burning rice straw. They used the straw to make food for their animals and cover their crops.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 The general idea of the text is about ....

a) clean air b) snow c) air pollution d) stars

2 In London, children go to school by ....

a) car b) bus c) train d) bike

B Answer the following questions:

3 What makes air pollution?

....

4 How does China try to stop air pollution?

....

5 Punctuate the following:

1 In Gharbia, egypt, farmers stopped burning rice straw

....

2 what can we do

دمياط 2024

....

6 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements:

مجاب عنه صفحة 256

"Air Pollution"

chemicals – dangerous – cough

....

....

....

....

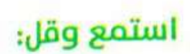


Lessons 5 & 6
Writing & Project





1. Listen and say:





Main vocabulary

energy-saving (adj.)	موفرة للكهرباء	lightbulbs	مصابيح	car-sharing	مشاركة السيارة
transportation	مواصلات	gas	بنزين	traffic	حركة المرور

Extra vocabulary

report	تقرير	apartment	شقة	trains	قطارات
balcony	بلكونة / شرفة	cleaner (adj.)	أنقى	main heading	عنوان رئيسى
sub-heading	عنوان فرعى	paragraph	فقرة	slowly	ببطء
important (adj.)	هام	fresh air	هواء نقى	breathing problems	مشاكل تنفس

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعــال منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
use	يستخدم	used	share	يتشارك	shared
change	يغير	changed	increase	يزيد	increased

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
hear	يسمع	heard	burn	يحرق	burnt

Expressions and Phrases

do research	يقوم ببحث	on the balcony	فى الشرفة
as a family	كعائلة	stop working	يتوقف عن العمل
put in	يركّب (اللمبة)	car-free roads	طرق خالية من السيارات
from behind	من الخلف		



A Writing

Youssef's report تقرير يوسف



2. Look and read: انظر واقرأ:

Introduction



Last week I heard Dr Helen Walker talking about air pollution. I liked her ideas and I did some research. I talked to my family about what we can do.

استمعت الأسبوع الماضى إلى الدكتورة «هيلين والكر» تتحدث عن تلوث الهواء. لقد أحببت أفكارها وقمت ببعض الأبحاث. لقد تحدثت مع عائلتى حول ما يمكننا القيام به.

What we can do

- We can have energy-saving lightbulbs in our apartment. • يمكننا الحصول على مصابيح موفرة للطاقة فى شقتنا.
- We can use buses and trains more. • يمكننا استخدام الأتوبيسات والقطارات أكثر.
- We can share a car with a friend sometimes. • يمكننا مشاركة السيارة مع صديق فى بعض الأحيان.
- We can walk and not always go by car. • يمكننا المشى ولا نذهب بالسيارة دائمًا.
- We can have many plants on our balcony. • يمكن أن يكون لدينا العديد من النباتات فى شرفتنا.

What we decided to do

We decided to change some things as a family. Dad now goes to work with his friend in the same car. Mom takes the bus to work. She doesn't drive. I now go to school by bike. My sister, Noura, walks to her school.
We have more plants in the living room and on the balcony. When our lightbulbs stop working, we can put in energy-saving lightbulbs. I'm excited!
Youssef

قررنا تغيير بعض الأشياء كعائلة. يذهب أبى الآن للعمل مع صديقه فى نفس السيارة. أمى تستقل الأتوبيس إلى العمل. هى لا تقود. أنا أذهب الآن إلى المدرسة بالدراجة. أختى نورا تمشى إلى مدرستها.
لدينا المزيد من النباتات فى غرفة المعيشة وفى الشرفة. عندما تتوقف مصابيحنا الكهربائية عن العمل، يمكننا تركيب مصابيح موفرة للطاقة. أنا متحمس! يوسف.

Check

1 How does Mom go to work? ....

2 Why is he excited? SB ....



More ideas to stop air pollution
المزيد من الأفكار لوقف تلوث الهواء



3. Read and notice:

اقرأ ولاحظ:

Don't burn rice straw.
لا تحرق قش الأرز.

Increase public transportation.
زد من وسائل المواصلات العامة.

Have cleaner gas in cars.
احصل على بنزين أنظف فى السيارات.

Have some car-free roads.
احصل على بعض الطرق الخالية من السيارات.

Travel on foot or by bike.
انتقل سيرًا على الأقدام أو بالدراجة.





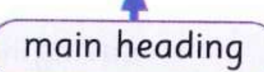


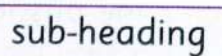
4. Look and read: انظر واقرأ:

Road Safety Leaflet
نشرة السلامة على الطرق









Be safe on the road كن آمنًا على الطريق

Use the crosswalks. استخدِم ممرات المشاة.

Walk slowly – don't run. امشِ ببطء - لا تجرِ.



Watch the traffic انتبه لحركة المرور

Listen for cars. استمع لأصوات السيارات.

Don't cross from behind a car. لا تعبر من خلف السيارة.



Read the road signs اقرأ علامات الطريق

Read the road signs. They give you important information about the road.

اقرأ إشارات الطريق. تعطيك الإشارات معلومات مهمة عن الطريق.

paragraph



Lessons 5 & 6



• Remembering • Understanding • Applying • Analyzing • Evaluating • Creating

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 When you are on the road, walk ....- don't run.

a) quickly b) slowly c) fast d) clearly

2 Be .... on the road.

a) safe b) dirty c) dangerous d) pollution

3 We use ....-saving lightbulbs to save electricity.

a) water b) gas c) juice d) energy

4 Mom .... the bus to work.

a) takes b) makes c) talks d) walks

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

دمياط 2024

share – dangerous – walk – lightbulbs – metro

Last week, my teacher was talking about air pollution. She gave us some ideas to stop air pollution. We can have energy-saving ....(1).......... in our apartments. We can use public transportation, such as buses and the ....(2).......... . Also, we can sometimes ....(3).......... a car with a friend. If you're going to a near place, you can ....(4).......... .

3 Read the text and answer the questions:

الشرقية 2024

We should do things to stop air pollution. We can use energy-saving lightbulbs in our apartments. We can use buses and trains more often. We can also have many plants on balconies. My family and I decided to make some changes to stop air pollution. Dad now goes to work with his friend in the same car. My sister, Mona, walks to school because her school isn't far. We put plants in our living room and on our balcony.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 The general idea of the text is about how to ....

a) save money b) go to work c) stop air pollution d) plant trees

2 We can use energy-saving .... in our apartments.

a) buses b) lightbulbs c) trains d) plants

B Answer the following questions:

3 How does Dad go to work now?

....

4 Why does Mona walk to school?

....

4 Punctuate the following:

1 we can share a car with a friend sometimes

....

2 She doesn t drive

....

3 don t burn rice straw.

....

5 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements:

مجاب عنه صفحة 256

"Ideas to stop air pollution"

- What causes air pollution?
- What can we do to stop air pollution?
- What should we put on our balconies?

....

....

....

....

Unit 11 REVIEW





يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من مراجعة أهم الأجزاء التى وردت بالوحدة.

Lesson (1)

rail	سكة حديد	ship	سفينة
airport	مطار	train	قطار
bus	حافلة	taxi	سيارة أجرة
boat	قارب	metro	مترو الأنفاق
plane	طائرة	water	هواء

Lesson (2)

safe	آمن	left	يسار
safety	أمان / سلامة	right	يمين
helmet	خوذة	camel	جمل
seat belt	حزام أمان	straight	مستقيم
light	ضوء	road signs	لافتات الطريق

Lesson (3)

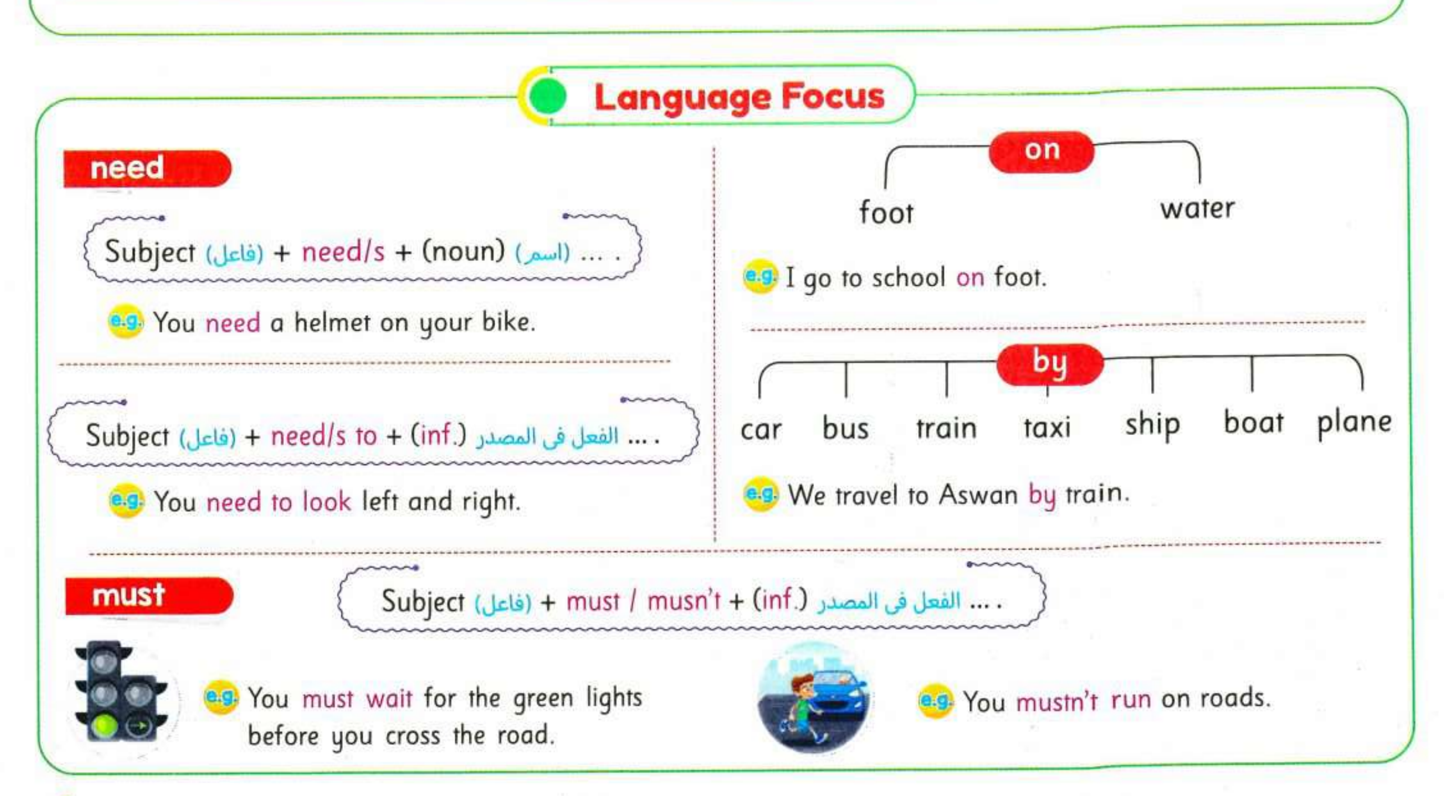
road	طريق	hospital	مستشفى
motorbike	دراجة بخارية	middle	منتصف
crosswalk	ممر مشاة	shocked	مصدوم
ambulance	سيارة إسعاف	scared	خائف

Lesson (4)

pollution	تلوث	rice straw	قش الأرز
chemicals	مواد كيميائية	photosynthesis	عملية البناء الضوئى
dangerous	خطر	dirty	متسخ
electric buses	أتوبيسات كهربائية	asthma	مرض الربو

Lessons (5 & 6)

energy-saving	موفرة للكهرباء	balcony	شرفة / بلكونة
lightbulbs	مصابيح	transportation	مواصلات
traffic	حركة المرور	fresh air	هواء نقى
apartment	شقة	important	هام



Language Focus

need

Subject (فاعل) + need/s + (noun) (اسم) ... .

e.g. You need a helmet on your bike.

Subject (فاعل) + need/s to + (inf.) الفعل فى المصدر ... .

e.g. You need to look left and right.

on: foot, water

e.g. I go to school on foot.

by: car, bus, train, taxi, ship, boat, plane

e.g. We travel to Aswan by train.

must

Subject (فاعل) + must / musn't + (inf.) الفعل فى المصدر ... .

e.g. You must wait for the green lights before you cross the road.

e.g. You mustn't run on roads.





تأكد من حفظك لكلمات الدروس قبل البدء فى إجابة اختبار الوحدة.

Lesson 1

قارب	....	سفينة	....
مترو الأنفاق	....	طائرة	....
مطار	....	قطار	....
سكة حديد	....	مطار	....
الهواء/ الجو	....	طريق	....

Lesson 2

حزام الأمان	....	آمن	....
خوذة	....	ضوء	....
يسار	....	يمين	....
جمل	....	مستقيم	....
لافتات الطريق	....	ينتظر	....

Lesson 3

دراجة بخارية	....	ممر المشاة	....
سيارة إسعاف	....	فى عجلة من أمره	....
مصدوم	....	خائف	....
مستشفى	....	شاب صغير السن	....
طبيب	....	حذر	

Lessons 4 , 5 & 6

مواد كيميائية	....	تلوث	....
خطير	....	أتوبيسات كهربائية	....
مشاكل تنفس	....	الطاقة الشمسية	....
مرض الربو	....	موفرة للكهرباء	....
تقرير	....	حركة المرور	....
متجددة	....	عملية البناء الضوئى	....

WRITING TIME





لكى تتمكن من كتابة الموضوعات بشكل مميز، اتبع هذه الخطوات.

How to write about transportation:

1. There are many means of public transportation in my town/city.
2. There are + اسم المواصلات that go/ move on + طريقة الانتقال.
3. When we go by + وسيلة المواصلات, we are on + طريقة الانتقال.

"Transportation"

There are many means of public transportation in my city. There are cars and buses that move on roads. When we go by trains or metros, we are on rails. When we go by planes, we go through the air. When we go by boats or ships, we are on water.

How to write about being safe on the road:

1. It's important to be safe on the road.
2. You need + أدوات أمان + in/on + your bike/car.
3. You need to + إرشادات عبور الطريق.

"Road safety"

It's important to be safe on the road. You need a helmet on your bike. You need a green light to cross the road. You need a seat belt in your car. You need to look right and left before you cross the road. Use the crosswalk and don't cross from behind a car.

How to write ideas to stop air pollution:

1. There are + عوامل تلوث الهواء + and cause air pollution.
2. Air pollution is dangerous because + مخاطر تلوث الهواء.
3. We can + طرق تقليل تلوث الهواء.

"Air pollution"

There are many cars that put chemicals in the air and make air pollution. Air pollution is dangerous because when we breathe polluted air, we cough, and feel sick. We can share a car with another person. We can walk or cycle to school. We can put more plants on our balconies too.



STUDENT'S BOOK CORNER

 يتضمن هذا الجزء أهم الأسئلة التى وردت بكتاب الوزارة.



1 Complete the sentences with words from the box:

taxi – plane – train – boat – car – ship – bus

1. When I travel by ……………, I go through the air.
2. When I travel by …………… and ……………, I am on the water.
3. When I travel by …………… and ……………, I am on the road.
4. I travel by …………… around the city.
5. When I travel to Luxor from Cairo by ……………, I move on a rail under the vehicle.

2 Look at the signs and complete:

1 
There are sometimes ………… on the road.

2 
You can't …………… here.

3 
You can go straight and ……… right.

4 
…… here and wait for a green light.

3 Put the words in the box in the correct column:

road signs – factories – crosswalk – seat belts – helmet – chemicals – smoke – too much traffic

Road safety	Air pollution

Test Yourself 30 — UNIT 11









Listening

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: 4

(للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب) الشرقية - إدارة فاقوس 2024

1 Sami likes ....
a) running b) walking c) swimming d) reading

2 Emad goes to work by ....
a) train b) plane c) ship d) car

3 Ali goes to work by ....
a) boat b) bike c) motorbike d) bus

4 Eman doesn't like to be on ....
a) water b) land c) street d) ground



Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: 2

القاهرة - إدارة السلام 2024

1 Ships and boats move on ....
a) water b) air c) roads d) land

2 Don't forget to wear your .... to protect your head.
a) ambulance b) helmet c) seat belt d) motorbike



3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: 2

power – healthy – idea – sick – share

دمياط 2024

Air pollution is dangerous. When we breathe polluted air, we cough and feel ....(1).......... . We need to stop air pollution. We can drive less or ....(2).......... a car with another person. It's also helpful to use more solar ....(3).......... . Planting more trees is a good ....(4).......... as well.



4 Read the text and answer the questions: 5

الشرقية 2024

Nancy lives in a big city with her family. There are many cars where she lives. These cars put chemicals in the air and make air pollution. Nancy thinks it is dangerous because when people breathe polluted air, they cough and feel sick. Nancy thinks her dad should share a car with a friend to go to work. Her mom can take the bus to work. And her sister Nada should walk to school because her school is near the house.



A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 The general idea of the text is about .... pollution.

a) water b) air c) sand d) soil

2 The underlined pronoun "they" refers to ....

a) cars b) chemicals c) people d) ideas

B Answer the following questions:

3 What should Nancy's dad do?

....

4 Why should Nada walk to school?

....

Writing

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

8

1 We travel .... (at) motorbike. القاهرة - إدارة روض الفرج 2024

2 You need to .... (creates) a password. بنى سويف 2024

3 We .... (mustn't) clean our house.

4 You must .... (told) your parents if you need help.

6 Punctuate the following:

2

people have electric buses in china.

....

7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements:

7

"Transportation in my town"

الإجابة صفحة 256

- How do you go to school?
- What's your favorite transportation?
- How do you travel?

....

....

....

....

Assess your progress

< 50%	50 : 64%	65 : 84%	85 : 100%
Study again	Practice more	Solve more exams	Well done!

Unit 11 AL-AZHAR CORNER

تحتوى هذه الصفحة على أسئلة خاصة بمواصفات الأزهر.

1 Listen and choose the correct answer:

1. We need to be (sad – hungry – careful) on the roads.
2. We must cross the road at the (supermarket – crosswalk – park).
3. We need a (green – red – yellow) light to cross the road.

2 Read and complete the dialogue:

need – get – helmet – bike

Omar : How do you .... to school?

Adel : I come to school by ....

Omar : What do you .... when you use your bike?

Adel : I need a ....

3 Choose the correct answer:

1. You need (look – to look – looked) left and right to cross the road.
2. When I travel by (train – plane – bus), I go through the air.
3. We can get (wind – cloud – solar) power from the sun.
4. You must (follow – follows – following) road signs.
5. They cross the roads at the (crosswalk – message – password).



APRIL REVISION

يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من المراجعة على محتوى شهر أبريل.

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Social .... is when we use computers and other devices. القاهرة 2024
   a) media b) movie c) photo d) number
2. I created a .... to get information. الجيزة 2024
   a) research b) chat c) secret d) password
3. I can .... my friends in photos online. بني سويف - إدارة ناصر 2024
   a) tag b) play c) study d) move
4. I .... into a library website. بني سويف 2024
   a) logged b) chatted c) created d) did
5. You can .... photos on social media. دمياط 2024
   a) share b) cut c) lake d) copy
6. Chameleons have amazing eyes, and they can .... all around.
   a) eat b) see c) fly d) hear
7. It's .... to play computer games for a long time. الشرقية - إدارة القنايات 2024
   a) healthy b) unhealthy c) good d) perfect
8. .... can change their color.
   a) Birds b) Fish c) Chameleons d) Tigers
9. I send a .... to my friend every week. بني سويف - إدارة الفنايم 2024
   a) color b) dream c) message d) room
10. It's .... that people can bully you online. أسيوط 2024
    a) scary b) fun c) happy d) interesting
11. Adel used his .... to log into the school's library. القاهرة - إدارة الشرابية 2024
    a) chat b) message c) password d) website
12. We need to .... right and left when we cross the road. الجيزة 2024
    a) sleep b) look c) give d) eat
13. You need to wear a .... in your car. بنها 2024
    a) skirt b) helmet c) seat belt d) tie
14. You need a helmet on your .... القاهرة - إدارة الزيتون 2024
    a) bike b) train c) car d) plane
15. They go to school .... bus. القاهرة - إدارة السلام 2024
    a) by b) of c) at d) with

16 When we travel by boat or ship, we are on .... الشرقية - إدارة كفر صقر 2024

a) air b) clouds c) road d) water

17 You should .... a helmet when you ride your bike. الجيزة 2024

a) wear b) walk c) win d) wonder

18 You need a .... light to cross the road. الجيزة 2024

a) blue b) red c) green d) pink

19 I go to school .... foot. It is near my house. الإسماعيلية 2024

a) by b) on c) in d) of

20 When I travel by ...., I go through the air. القاهرة - إدارة الوايلي 2024

a) bus b) train c) plane d) car

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

research – devices – homework – world – have الإسكندرية 2024

Social media has an important role in our life. Social media helps all people around the ....(1)........ . People can use computers and other ....(2)........ to share their ideas. Children can use social media to ....(3)........ fun. Scientists can use social media to do ....(4)........ .

food – friends – number – strong – secret دمياط 2024

It is important to stay safe online. You should keep your password ....(1)........ . You shouldn't tell everyone your phone ....(2)........ . You shouldn't make new ....(3)........ online with people you don't know. You should use a ....(4)........ password. Don't bully people online.

share – dangerous – walk – lightbulbs – metro دمياط - إدارة كفر سعد 2024

Last week, my teacher was talking about air pollution. She gave us some ideas to stop air pollution. We can have energy-saving ....(1)........ in our apartments. We can use means of transportation such as buses and the ....(2)........ . Also, we can sometimes ....(3)........ a car with a friend. If you're going to a near place, you can ....(4)........ .

travel – rides – by – plane – on أسيوط - صدفا 2024

My name is Hana. I go to school ....(1)........ foot. I love walking. My school is near my house. My father goes to work ....(2)........ car. My brother ....(3)........ his bike to school. My mom takes a taxi. We usually ....(4)........ to Aswan by train.

3 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1. You should .... (uses) social media safely. الجيزة - إدارة البدرشين 2024
2. We should .... (keeping) our school clean. البحر الأحمر - إدارة الغردقة 2024
3. You .... (shouldn't) wear a helmet on your bike. بنى سويف
4. You .... (shouldn't) be safe online.
5. You .... (should) tell your password to anyone. منيا القمح
6. Children shouldn't .... (eats) too many sweets. القاهرة - إدارة السلام 2024
7. They .... (shouldn't) be respectful. القاهرة - إدارة السلام 2024
8. You shouldn't .... (gives) your password to anyone.
9. You .... (shouldn't) eat healthy food.
10. I .... (shouldn't) listen to my teacher.
11. I love traveling .... (by) water. الجيزة 2024
12. You should .... (wearing) a seat belt in your car. الإسكندرية 2024
13. You .... (needs) to follow road signs. الفيوم 2024
14. I love traveling .... (by) water. الفيوم 2024
15. They often travel .... (on) car. الجيزة - هرم 2024
16. You need to .... (eats) healthy food. بنى سويف 2024
17. Who comes to school .... (at) bus? بنى سويف 2024
18. You need .... (of) look left and right, when you cross a road. القاهرة - إدارة مدينة نصر 2024
19. I go to work .... (by) foot. بورسعيد 2024
20. You must .... (wearing) a helmet on the bike. الجيزة - إدارة الهرم 2024

4 Punctuate the following:

1. We travel to aswan by train البحر الأحمر 2024

....

2. is the air clean in Egypt أسيوط 2024

....

3. how did you travel to school yesterday الشرقية 2024

....

4. I m doing research about chameleons

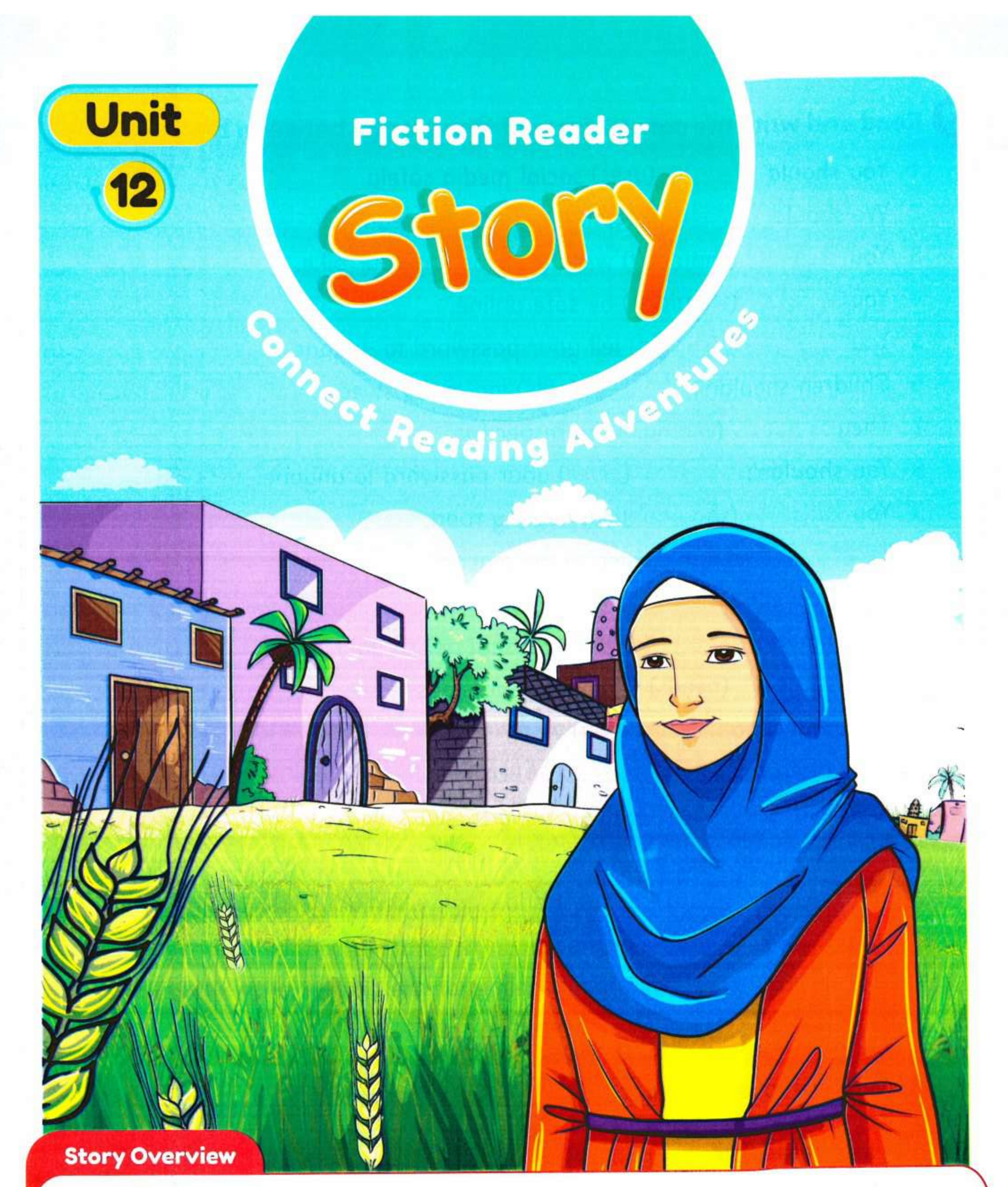
....

5. hoda is doing a project on bats

....

6. some cities try to stop air pollution الدقهلية 2024

....



Story Overview

- **By the end of the story, the student will be able to:**

● بنهاية القصة سيكون التلميذ قادرًا على أن:

- read and understand a story.
- enjoy reading in English.
- identify characters in a story.
- identify key events and vocabulary in a story.

- يقرأ ويفهم قصة.
- يستمتع بالقراءة باللغة الإنجليزية.
- يتعرف على الشخصيات فى القصة.
- يتعرف على الأحداث الهامة والكلمات فى القصة.

Dalia Saves The Village!

Title
العنوان

داليا تنقذ القرية!

By Nicola Gardner



Author
المؤلف

Warm-up

Dalia lives in a village in Egypt. She is doing research about crops in Egypt. The crops aren't growing well in the village. There is a problem with the irrigation canal in the village. Dalia wants to help people in the village. She contacts all the people there on social media asking for help. They decide to help her. They manage to solve the problem together so the villagers can grow crops again. Dalia tells the villagers more about her research to grow different crops. She advises them to grow wheat. Everything is better now in the village. Dalia decides to work with agriculture when she grows up.

تعيش داليا فى قرية فى مصر. وهى تجرى أبحاثًا حول المحاصيل فى مصر. لا تنمو المحاصيل بشكل جيد فى القرية. توجد مشكلة فى قناة الرى فى القرية. تريد داليا مساعدة الناس فى القرية. تتواصل مع جميع الناس هناك على وسائل التواصل الاجتماعى طلبًا للمساعدة. فيقررون مساعدتها. يتمكنون من حل المشكلة معًا حتى يتمكن القرويون من زراعة المحاصيل مرة أخرى. تخبر داليا القرويين بالمزيد عن أبحاثها لزراعة محاصيل مختلفة. تنصحهم بزراعة القمح. كل شىء أفضل الآن فى القرية. تقرر داليا العمل فى الزراعة عندما تكبر.



Story

Dalia Saves the Village!



A Vocabulary





1. Listen, point, and say:





wheat قمح



crop محصول



irrigation canal قناة الري



irrigation الري





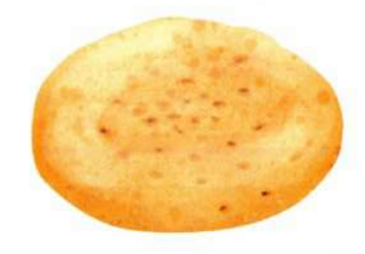
wheat flour دقيق قمح



maize ذرة



village قرية



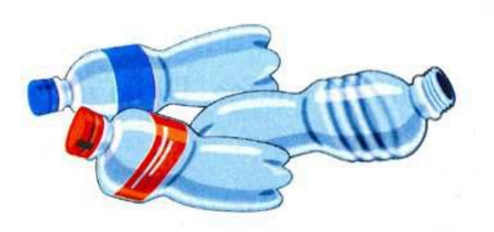
baladi bread خبز بلدى (عيش بلدى)



cookies بسكويت (كوكيز)



trash قمامة



plastic bottles زجاجات بلاستيكية



trash bags أكياس القمامة

Extra vocabulary

interesting (adj.)	شيق	important (adj.)	مهم
delicious (adj.)	لذيذ (شهى)	well	بشكل جيد
problem	مشكلة	simple (adj.)	بسيط
call (v.)	ينادى/ يتصل	social media	وسائل التواصل الاجتماعى
get (v.)	يحصل على	meet (v.)	يقابل
main square	الميدان الرئيسى	grandparents	أجداد
tea	شاى	bring (v.)	يوصل/ يحضر
household things	أغراض منزلية	deep (adj.)	عميق
polluted (adj.)	ملوثة	again	مرة أخرى / مجددًا
land	أرض	sell (v.)	يبيع
produce (v.)	ينتج	fields	حقول
awesome (adj.)	رائع	changes	تغيرات
proud (adj.)	فخور	agriculture	الزراعة

Expressions and Phrases

do homework	يقوم بعمل الواجب المنزلى	do research about	يقوم بعمل بحث عن
to like (something) best	يحب (شيئًا) أكثر من أى شىء آخر	look sad	يبدو حزينًا
help with	يساعد فى	get together	يتجمع
in the center of	فى وسط	blocked with	مسدود بـ
clear the trash	يزيل (يتخلص من) القمامة	fill ... with	يملأ ... بـ....
come back	يعود	become easier	يصبح أسهل
have a plan	لديه خطة	in a few years	فى خلال سنوات قليلة
walk around	يتجول	grow up	يكبر





2. Read and notice:

اقرأ ولاحظ:



الشخصيات

Main characters
الشخصيات الرئيسية



Dalia
داليا



Gameela (Dalia's mom)
جميلة (والدة داليا)



Waleed (Dalia's dad)
وليد (والد داليا)



the villagers
أهل القرية



Tarek (Dalia's brother)
طارق (أخو داليا)



Dalia's grandma
جدة داليا



Dalia's grandpa
جد داليا



المكان



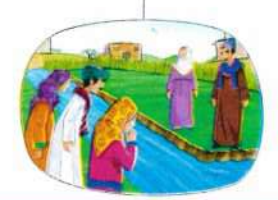
Dalia's house
منزل داليا



the village
القرية



the main square
الميدان الرئيسى



the irrigation canal
قناة الرى



Dalia's grandparents' house
منزل أجداد داليا



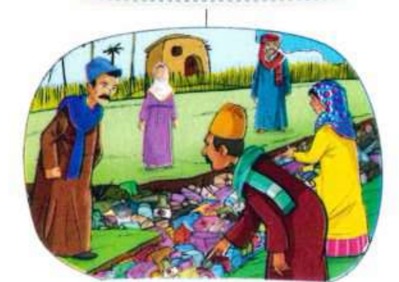
الحبكة



The Beginning

Dalia discusses the irrigation problem in the village with her family. She wants to help the village. She calls everyone in the village on social media to tell them about the problem.

تناقش داليا مشكلة الرى فى القرية مع عائلتها. تريد داليا مساعدة القرية. تتصل داليا بجميع سكان القرية عبر وسائل التواصل الاجتماعى لتخبرهم عن المشكلة.



The Middle

Dalia and her family go to see the problem. The irrigation canal is blocked with trash. The villagers clear the trash. The water is clean now in the canal.

تذهب داليا وعائلتها لمعاينة المشكلة. قناة الرى مسدودة بالقمامة. يزيل أهل القرية القمامة. المياه نظيفة الآن فى القناة.



The End

The water comes back to the village. People can grow crops again. They grow more different crops like wheat. Everything is better now in the village.

تعود المياه إلى القرية. يستطيع أهل القرية زراعة المحاصيل مجددًا. يزرعون الكثير من المحاصيل المتنوعة مثل القمح. كل شىء أصبح أفضل الآن فى القرية.





3. Listen, read, and role-play:

استمع، اقرأ وتبادل الأدوار:

The Beginning بداية القصة

Dalia lives in a village in Egypt. One evening she is doing her homework on her computer. She is doing research about crops in Egypt, like wheat, maize, and rice, and it is very interesting. Wheat is an important crop in our country and we use it to make bread. Dalia looks at the pictures of delicious Egyptian bread. Dalia likes baladi bread best. Which is your favorite?

تعيش داليا فى قرية فى مصر. ذات ليلة، تقوم بعمل واجبها المنزلى على الكمبيوتر. تقوم بعمل بحث عن بعض المحاصيل فى مصر مثل القمح والذرة والأرز، وهذا شيق للغاية. يعتبر القمح محصولًا مهمًا فى بلدنا حيث نستخدمه فى صناعة الخبز. تنظر داليا لصور خبز مصرى شهى. تحب داليا الخبز البلدى أكثر من أى نوع آخر. ما الخبز المفضل لديك؟



What food does Dalia like best?





Dalia's mom, Gameela, is speaking to Dalia's dad, Waleed, who looks sad. "The crops are not growing well in the village. There is a problem with the water and we have no irrigation," says Gameela to Dalia. "We need to help everyone in the village with their crops." Dalia's brother, Tarek, says, "But what can we do?" Dalia says, "It's very simple. Let's call everyone in the village on social media. We need to help our village."

تتحدث جميلة (والدة داليا) إلى وليد (والد داليا) الذى يبدو حزينًا. تقول جميلة لداليا: «لا تنمو المحاصيل بشكل جيد فى القرية. توجد مشكلة متعلقة بالمياه ولا يوجد لدينا رى». «يجب علينا مساعدة الجميع فى القرية فى محاصيلهم.». يقول طارق أخو داليا: «لكن ماذا يمكننا أن نفعل؟» تقول داليا: «إنه أمر سهل للغاية. دعنا نتواصل مع كل فرد فى القرية عبر وسائل التواصل الاجتماعى. نحن نحتاج إلى أن نساعد قريتنا».

Check

What is the village's problem?

....



Dalia's family gets water from the Nile. But the irrigation canal is not working. She tells everyone in the village about this problem on social media, then meets everyone in the main square. A lot of villagers say they can help.

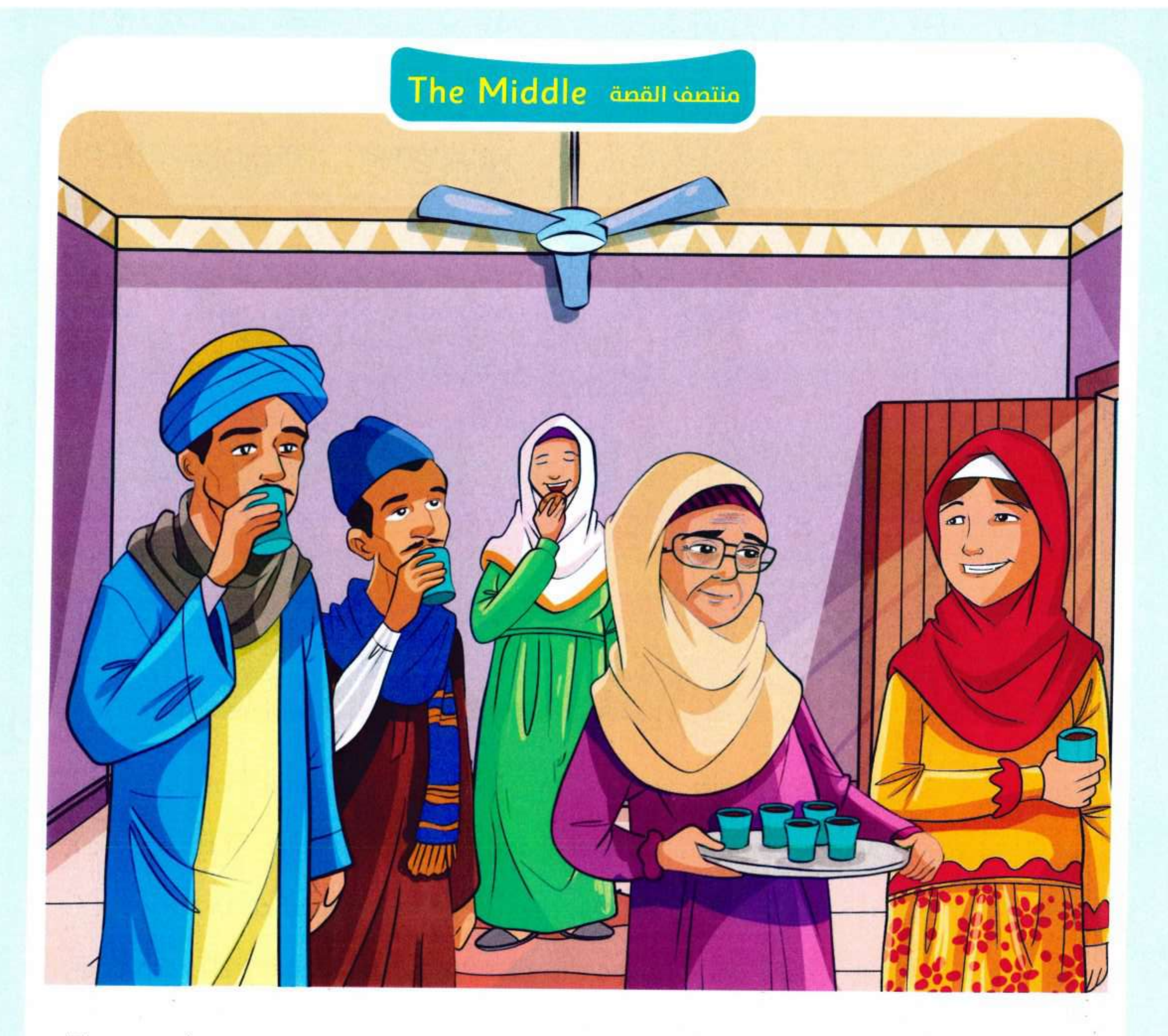
تحصل عائلة داليا على المياه من نهر النيل. لكن قناة الرى لا تعمل. تخبر داليا الجميع فى القرية بهذه المشكلة من خلال وسائل التواصل الاجتماعى ثم تلتقى بالجميع فى الميدان الرئيسى. يقول الكثير من أهل القرية إنهم يمكنهم تقديم المساعدة.

Check

How does Dalia tell everyone about the problem?

....

The Middle منتصف القصة



The next day everyone gets together in the center of the village. Some people come on foot, and some by bike. Some people come by boat or by car from another village to help.

Everyone is very excited to help with the problem. They meet at Dalia's grandparents' house. Dalia's grandma gives them tea and cookies.

فى اليوم التالى يجتمع الجميع فى وسط القرية. يأتى بعض الأفراد سيرًا على الأقدام والبعض الآخر باستخدام الدراجة. يأتى بعض الأشخاص بالقارب أو بالسيارة من قرية أخرى ليقدموا المساعدة. الجميع متحمسون لحل المشكلة. يلتقى الجميع فى منزل أجداد داليا. تقدم لهم جدة داليا الشاى والبسكويت (الكوكيز) .

Check

Where do the villagers get together?

Dalia and her family go to see the problem. The irrigation canal that brings the water is blocked with trash – plastic bottles and household things. There are also some plants in the water. Tarek says, "We need to start work and clean the water." The water is not very deep and they start to clear the trash. They fill 20 trash bags with the trash. Now the water isn't polluted.

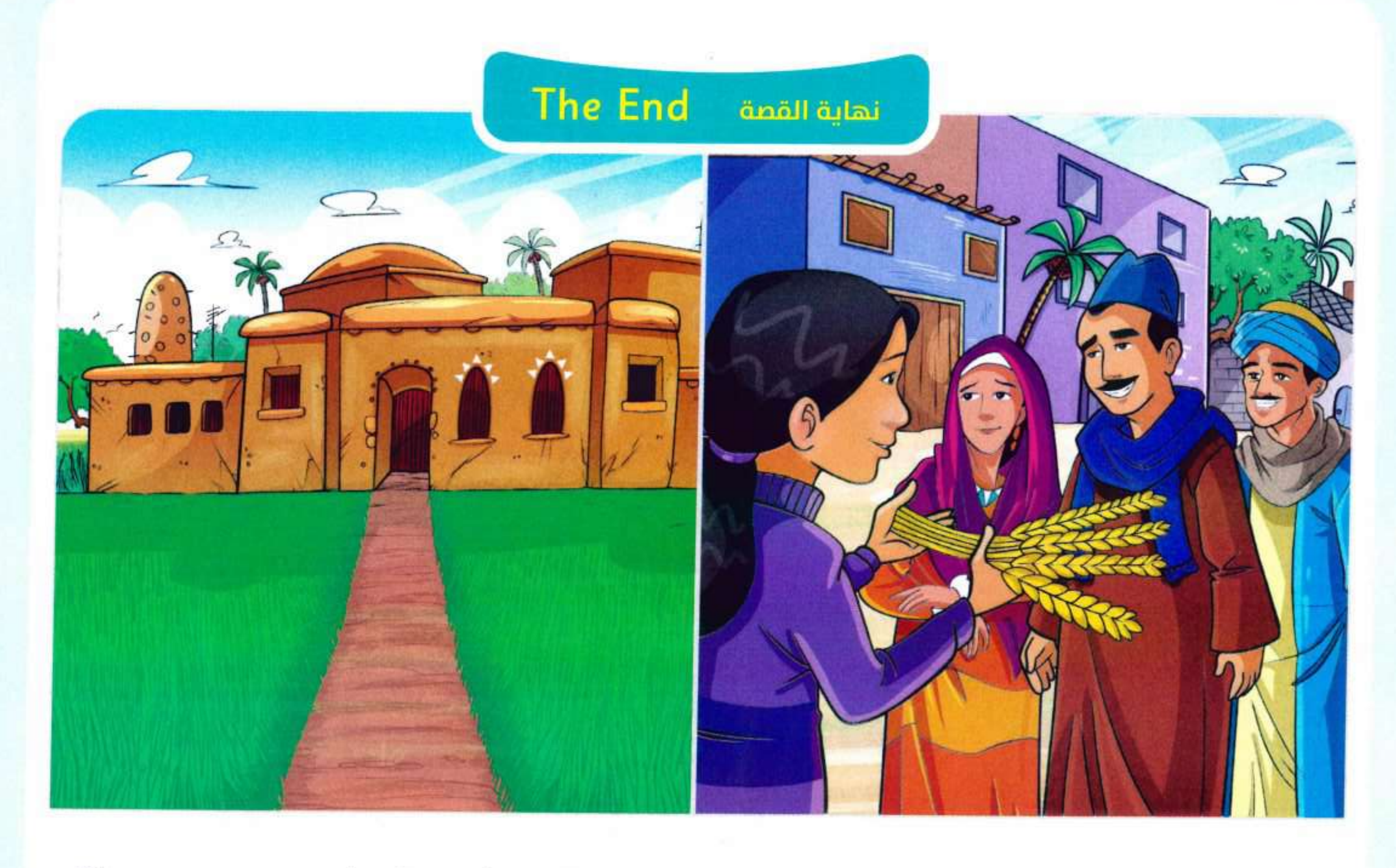
تذهب داليا وعائلتها لمعاينة المشكلة. وجدوا أن قناة الرى التى توصل المياه مسدودة بالقمامة كالزجاجات البلاستيكية والأغراض المنزلية. كما توجد بعض النباتات فى المياه. يقول طارق «علينا أن نبدأ العمل وننظف المياه». المياه ليست عميقة للغاية ويبدأ الجميع بإزالة القمامة. يملأ أهل القرية 20 كيس قمامة بالقمامة الموجودة. الآن، المياه غير ملوثة.



What do the villagers do to clear the trash?

....

The End نهاية القصة



The water comes back to the village and the crops grow again. Everyone is very happy. They can grow food on their land and they can sell their fruit and vegetables to buy other things. Their lives become easier. But some of the crops are not very good.

Dalia has a plan. She thinks the villagers can produce more food. She says they should try wheat – she tells them about her research. She says wheat grows very well in Egypt and is great for making delicious bread and cakes.

Some villagers like the idea – they start to grow wheat in some of their fields.

تعود المياه إلى القرية وتنمو المحاصيل مجددًا. الجميع سعداء للغاية. يستطيعون الآن زراعة الغذاء على أرضهم ويستطيعون بيع الفاكهة والخضراوات الخاصة بهم لشراء أشياء أخرى. تصبح حياتهم أسهل. لكن بعض المحاصيل ليست جيدة جدًا. لدى داليا خطة. تعتقد أن أهل القرية يمكنهم إنتاج المزيد من الغذاء. فعليهم تجربة زراعة القمح. تخبرهم داليا عن بحثها. وتقول إن القمح ينمو بشكل جيد جدًا فى مصر وهو جيد لصناعة خبز لذيذ وكعك. يعجب بعض من أهل القرية بالفكرة. فيبدأون بزراعة القمح فى بعض حقولهم.

Check

What do the villagers start to grow in their fields?

....



From the wheat, they can make flour. From the flour, they can make delicious Egyptian bread. Grandma can make more of her awesome cookies. The villagers make bread and cookies to sell to other villages.

يمكنهم صناعة الدقيق من القمح. من الدقيق يمكنهم صناعة الخبز المصرى الشهى. تستطيع الجدة صنع المزيد من البسكويت (الكوكيز) الرائع الخاص بها. يصنع أهل القرية الخبز والبسكويت (الكوكيز) ليتمكنوا من بيعها إلى القرى الأخرى.

Check

Why do the villagers make bread and cookies?



In a few years, everything is better in the village. Dalia walks around the village and sees the changes. She is very proud. When she grows up, she works with agriculture to help other people with their crops.

فى خلال سنوات قليلة، أصبح كل شىء أفضل فى القرية. تتجول داليا حول القرية وتلقى نظرة على التغييرات. هى فخورة جدًّا. عندما تكبر ستعمل فى مجال الزراعة لتساعد الآخرين فى محاصيلهم.

Check

Why does Dalia work with agriculture?

....

Story Summary ملخص القصة

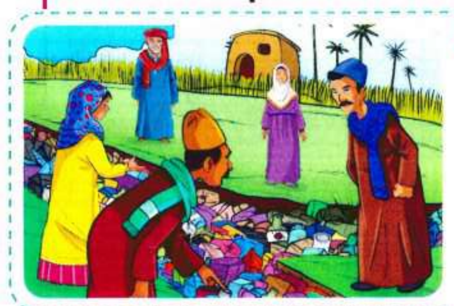


4. Look and read: انظر واقرأ:

There is a problem in the village where Dalia lives.

توجد مشكلة فى القرية التى تعيش فيها داليا.

The problem المشكلة



What is the problem in the village?

ماهى المشكلة الموجودة فى القرية؟

The crops aren't growing well. There is a problem with the irrigation canal. It's blocked with trash.

لا تنمو المحاصيل بشكل جيد. توجد مشكلة متعلقة بقناة الرى. إنها مسدودة بالقمامة.

The process الطريقة



What does Dalia do? ماذا تفعل داليا؟

Dalia tells everyone in the village about the problem on social media. She meets them in the main square to help with the problem.

تخبر داليا جميع أهل القرية عن المشكلة عبر وسائل التواصل الاجتماعى. تقابل داليا أهل القرية فى الميدان الرئيسى لحل المشكلة .

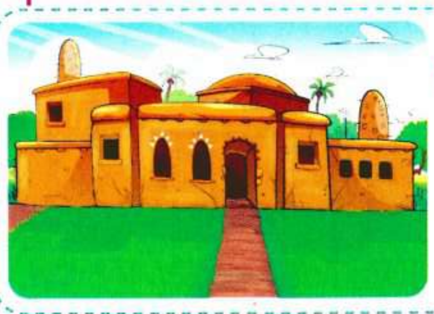


What do the villagers do? ماذا يفعل أهل القرية؟

The villagers clear the trash. They fill 20 trash bags with trash.

يزيل أهل القرية القمامة. يقومون بملء 20 كيسًا من أكياس القمامة بالقمامة الموجودة.

The solution/conclusion الحل (نهاية المشكلة)



What is the result? ما هى النتيجة؟

The water comes back to the village and the crops grow again.

تعود المياه مرة أخرى الى القرية وتنمو المحاصيل مجددًا.



On Story



• Remembering • Understanding • Applying • Analyzing • Evaluating • Creating

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Dalia lives in a .... in Egypt.
   a) city b) village c) river d) desert
2. She is doing her homework on her ....
   a) phone b) laptop c) computer d) TV
3. She is doing research about .... in Egypt.
   a) crops b) food c) people d) animals
4. Dalia looks at the pictures of delicious Egyptian ....
   a) cakes b) cheese c) wheat d) bread

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Sara is .... her homework.
   a) making b) doing c) playing d) having
2. We grow lots of .... in our country.
   a) bread b) cookies c) crops d) water
3. He doesn't smile. He .... sad.
   a) looks b) makes c) grows d) works
4. It's very .... I can do it.
   a) difficult b) hard c) wrong d) simple
5. The crops are not growing well because we have no ....
   a) food b) irrigation c) social media d) problem
6. People who live in a village are called ....
   a) animals b) scientists c) tourists d) villagers
7. We meet on Fridays. We get .... every weekend.
   a) back b) off c) together d) up
8. The irrigation canal that brings the water is .... with trash.
   a) blocked b) excited c) worked d) cleaned
9. We cleared the trash. The water isn't ....
   a) clean b) polluted c) good d) beautiful
10. My brother helped me to fill the bottles .... water.
    a) at b) of c) with d) in
11. My grandma makes .... cakes. I like them.
    a) bad b) horrible c) trash d) delicious
12. Farmers grow vegetables and fruit in some of their ....
    a) folders b) fields c) bread d) cakes
13. Farmers live in a ....
    a) village b) town c) city d) country
14. People contact each other on ....
    a) canal b) village c) social media d) crops
15. I'm playing with my friends. I'm very ....
    a) sad b) unhappy c) bad d) excited

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

social media – irrigation – Nile – villagers – village

Dalia's family gets water from the ....(1)......... . But the ....(2)......... canal is not working. She tells everyone in the village about this problem on ....(3)............, then meets everyone in the main square. A lot of ....(4)............ say they can help.

4 Read the sentences and correct the mistake:

1 Dalia lives in a city in Egypt. (......................)
2 Dalia's family gets water from the lake. (......................)
3 The irrigation canal that brings the water is blocked with toys. (......................)
4 The water comes back to the village and the groups grow again. (......................)
5 When Dalia grows up, she works with desert to help other people with their crops. (......................)

5 Read the text and answer the questions:

Dalia lives in a village in Egypt. She is doing research about crops in Egypt. The crops aren't growing well in the village. There is a problem with the irrigation canal in the village. Dalia wants to help people in the village. She contacts all the people there on social media asking for help. They decide to help her. They manage to solve the problem together so the villagers can grow crops again.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 The general idea of the text is about Dalia's ....
a) family b) school c) village d) homework

2 There is a problem with the .... canal in the village.
a) irrigation b) food c) social d) crops

B Answer the following questions:

3 What is Dalia's research about?

....

4 Why does Dalia contact all the villagers on social media?

....

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1 blocked – The canal – with – is – trash.

....

2 in – lives – a village – Dalia – in Egypt.

....

3 social media – everyone – on – Dalia – calls.

....

4 the village – to – comes – The water – back.

....



Final Revision and Exams

- Revision on Vocabulary
- Revision on Grammar
- Exercises on Each 2 Units
- 11 Final Exams
- 2 Al-Azhar Exams
- 1 امتحان دمج



Unit 7

city	مدينة كبيرة	building	مبنى	river	نهر
forest	غابة	desert	صحراء	village	قرية
oasis	واحة	mountain	جبل	interesting	شيق/ مثير للاهتمام
center	مركز	branch	فرع	reptiles	زواحف
memories	ذكريات	trucks	شاحنات	curious	فضولي
excited	متحمس	quiet	هادئ	space	مكان
ground	أرض	metal	معدن	inside	داخل
hole	حفرة	pleased	مسرور	delighted	مبتهج
mice	فئران	moral	الدرس الأخلاق (العبرة)	the country	الريف
seeds	بذور	pretty	جميل	bright	لامع
lights	أضواء	loud	صاخب	scared	خائف
sounds	أصوات	smells	روائح	voice	صوت (بشري)
nervous	عصبي/ متوتر	backpack	حقيبة الظهر	gate	بوابة
electricity	الكهرباء	shopping mall	مول تجاري	toys	ألعاب
gray	رمادى	pants	بنطلون	neighbors	جيران
noisy	مزعج	shoe store	متجر أحذية	modern	حديث

Unit 8

a packet of	عبوة من	a bar of	قالب من	a carton of	علبة من
cookies	بسكويت (كوكيز)	chocolate	شوكولاتة	juice	عصير
candies	الحلوى	soap	الصابون	milk	لبن
a bottle of	زجاجة من	a slice of	شريحة من	a piece of	قطعة من
pizza	بيتزا	bread	خبز	lemonade	عصير ليمون
meat	لحم	party	حفلة	thirsty	عطشان
poem	قصيدة شعر	octopus	أخطبوط	dish	طبق/ وجبة
trip	رحلة قصيرة	deep	عميق	lovely	جميل
meal	وجبة	healthy	صحى	dessert	تحلية
frozen	مجمد	yogurt	زبادى	photos	صور فوتوغرافية
soon	قريبًا	jellyfish	قنديل البحر	sunset	غروب الشمس
Islamic month	شهر إسلامى (هجرى)	kahk	كحك	mosque	جامع
Coptic Easter	عيد الفصح القبطى	festival	مهرجان/ عيد	after	بعد
Muslim	مسلم	different	مختلف	Shawwal	شهر شوال
delicious	لذيذ	nuts	مكسرات	sugar	سكر
honey	عسل	bakery	مخبز	celebration	احتفال
salted fish	سمك مملح	colored	ملون	special	مميز
cousins	أولاد العم	aunt	عمة/ خالة	uncle	عم/خال
huge	ضخم	salad	سلطة	new life	حياة جديدة





on Vocabulary Units 7 & 8

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Ali could climb the high .... last week.
   a) moon b) earth c) mountain d) oasis
2. There are a lot of trees in the ....
   a) river b) desert c) building d) forest
3. My dad was happy and ....
   a) sad b) bad c) excited d) sick
4. The city is very busy and .... أسيوط _ إدارة ديروط 2024
   a) quiet b) calm c) noisy d) free
5. The village was .... but now it is noisy.
   a) big b) quiet c) loud d) young
6. I went to the .... area to buy some clothes.
   a) shopping b) library c) smoking d) kids
7. My sister was .... a history project at school.
   a) playing b) doing c) driving d) looking
8. We .... on a blue shirt and gray pants for school.
   a) find b) put c) look d) have
9. The Nile River has two ....
   a) beaches b) seas c) branches d) mountains
10. The dog was scary. I was .... when I saw it.
    a) happy b) delighted c) nervous d) excited
11. I bought three .... of soap.
    a) bars b) bottles c) slices d) cartons
12. We drank two .... of milk.
    a) pieces b) slices c) cartons d) bars
13. We need a .... of water.
    a) bar b) bottle c) slice d) piece
14. Salma lives in a tall .... in the city. القاهرة - إدارة الشرابية 2024
    a) mountain b) building c) tree d) forest
15. The .... lives in the sea.
    a) octopus b) lion c) camel d) chicken
16. Bananas and frozen yogurt are healthy ....
    a) deserts b) desserts c) fish d) vegetables

17 Eid Al-Fitr is a festival when we eat ....

a) noodles b) meat c) salted fish d) kahk

18 I went to the .... to buy some cookies.

a) hospital b) library c) bakery d) beach

19 Kahk are delicious ....

a) cake b) cookies c) candies d) juice

20 She looks a bit .... She is sick.

a) brown b) yellow c) blue d) green

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

A home – important – market – Egypt – river

القاهرة - إدارة السلام 2024

The Nile provides us with water and food. The Nile has two branches in ....(1).......... . The Nile is the longest ....(2).......... in the world. That's like traveling to the center of the earth. The Nile is a ....(3).......... for different kinds of fish and turtles. The Nile is very ....(4).......... . It brings life to Egypt.

B pants – home – nervous – gate – school

I remember my first day at school. I was very ....(1).........., I didn't want to go to ....(2).......... . I put on a blue T-shirt and gray ....(3).......... . I carried my backpack. At the school ....(4).........., I said goodbye to my dad and mom.

C songs – birthday – see – friends – bought

الدقهلية - إدارة دكرنس 2024

Yesterday was a very special day. It was my ....(1).......... . I had a party. All my ....(2).......... and neighbors came to my party. They gave me wonderful presents. Mom and Dad ....(3).......... a cake for me. We sang a lot of ....(4).......... . We were very happy. It was a nice day.

D packet – bar – pizza – carton – milk

الشرقية - إدارة صان الحجر 2024

Yesterday was too hot. I drank one ....(1).......... of juice. My sister ate a ....(2).......... of cookies. We bought a ....(3).......... of chocolate. We went home and had delicious slices of ....(4).......... .



B) Revision on Grammar



The Past Simple Tense

يستخدم زمن الماضى البسيط للتعبير عن فعل حدث وانتهى فى الماضى فى وقت معين.

1. Regular verbs:

أفعال منتظمة:

Subject (الفاعل) + (inf.) الفعل فى المصدر + ed/d/ied ... .

e.g. He played tennis last week.

e.g. We studied English yesterday.

2. Irregular verbs:

أفعال غير منتظمة:

Subject + التصريف الثانى للفعل ...

e.g. I found the book.

e.g. She bought a new bag.

Negative Form:

Subject + didn't + (inf.) (الفعل فى المصدر) ... .

e.g. She didn't watch TV last week.

Yes/No Question:

A: Did + subject + (inf.) الفعل فى المصدر ...?

B: Yes,	subject	did.
B: No,		didn't.

e.g. A: Did she visit her grandpa?
B: Yes, she did.

e.g. A: Did they go to the cinema?
B: No, they didn't.

Wh- Question:

A: Wh- word كلمة الاستفهام	did	subject	(inf.) الفعل فى المصدر ...?
B: Subject (الفاعل) + التصريف الثانى للفعل			

e.g. A: What did you buy?
B: I bought a new car.

e.g. A: Where did they go?
B: They went to the park.

Verb to "be" in the Past Simple
فعل "يكون" فى زمن الماضى البسيط

Affirmative Form:

I / He / She / It + was ... .

I was very excited yesterday.

We / They / You + were ... .

My parents were in Cairo last month.

Negative Form:

I / He / She / It + was not (wasn't) ... .

Salma wasn't sad yesterday.

We/ They/ You + were not (weren't) ... .

We weren't happy at the party.

Key words:

yesterday أمس / ago منذ / last السابق/الماضى / in the past فى الماضى



The Past Simple Tense with Irregular Verbs
زمن الماضى البسيط مع الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Irregular verbs أفعــال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
see	يرى	saw	go	يذهب	went
swim	يعوم	swam	forget	ينسى	forgot
eat	يأكل	ate	cut	يقطع	cut
sing	يغنى	sang	come	يأتى	came
catch	يمسك / يصطاد	caught	say	يقول	said
buy	يشترى	bought	run	يجرى	ran
fly	يطير	flew	have	يملك/ يتناول	had
hear	يسمع	heard	make	يصنع	made
give	يعطى	gave	am/is	يكون (للمفرد)	was
write	يكتب	wrote	are	يكون (للجمع)	were
throw	يرمى	threw	drink	يشرب	drank



on Grammar Units 7 & 8

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. I .... to school last week.
   a) walk b) walks c) walking d) walked
2. Grandpa .... a box of his memories when he was eight years old.
   a) bury b) buries c) buried d) burying
3. They didn't .... their grandparents yesterday.
   a) visit b) visits c) visiting d) visited
4. There .... no cars in the past.
   a) was b) were c) is d) are
5. A: How did you feel on your first day of school? B: I .... nervous.
   a) is b) am c) did d) was
6. Omar .... sleep last night.
   a) don't b) isn't c) doesn't d) didn't
7. My parents .... me a beautiful present on my last birthday.
   a) give b) gave c) giving d) gives
8. A: What .... you eat? B: I ate an apple.
   a) was b) were c) do d) did
9. She .... come to school yesterday.
   a) don't b) doesn't c) didn't d) wasn't
10. They played football together ....
    a) now b) tomorrow c) tonight d) yesterday
11. I had my swimming test yesterday. I .... 50 meters.
    a) swam b) swim c) swims d) swimming
12. We .... some old photos. They were amazing.
    a) see b) saw c) seeing d) sees
13. We .... "Happy Birthday" to our teacher this morning.
    a) song b) sings c) sang d) singing
14. Where did he ....?
    a) travel b) travels c) traveling d) traveled
15. A: Did you go to school this morning? B: Yes, I ....
    a) do b) didn't c) don't d) did

16 I went to the beach and I .... a jellyfish.

a) see   b) seeing   c) saw   d) sees

17 Hend .... two bars of chocolate last night.

a) buy   b) bought   c) buying   d) buys

18 Last weekend, we .... to Damietta to see our grandma.

a) go   b) went   c) going   d) gone

19 Grandpa .... a fish, which Grandma made into a lovely dish!

a) cat   b) catch   c) caught   d) catching

20 We .... fun. We were happy.

a) has   b) had   c) have   d) having

2 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1 What subject .... (do) you study yesterday?

2 Ahmed .... (visit) his uncle last week. الفيوم - إدارة إطسا 2024

3 Yesterday, they .... (play) football in the club.

4 When did your friend .... (arrives)? الجيزة - إدارة العمرانية 2024

5 They didn't .... (goes) to school last week. القاهرة - إدارة السطرية 2024

6 We .... (not play) football yesterday. الجيزة 2024

7 A: Did you ride your bike yesterday? B: No, I .... (don't).

8 I didn't travel to Alex .... (next) week.

9 The village .... (were) very quiet in the past. أسيوط - إدارة منفلوط 2024

10 What did you .... (bought) yesterday?

11 I lived in Aswan when I .... (am) six years old.

12 We visited the Egyptian Museum last week. We .... (was) happy.

13 I .... (don't) see Aya yesterday.

14 What did Magdy .... (wore) yesterday?

15 Grandpa .... (were) eight years old when he buried his box.

16 She .... (leave) home early yesterday. القاهرة - إدارة الوايلي 2024

17 Nada .... (win) the race last Friday.

18 We .... (see) a show yesterday.

19 He .... (fall) and hurt his leg last week.

20 I .... (have) a birthday party last month.





Units 9 & 10 — A) Revision on Vocabulary

Unit 9

English	Arabic	English	Arabic	English	Arabic
Pass the parcel	لعبة نقل الطرود	Musical chairs	لعبة الكراسي الموسيقية	Hide and seek	لعبة الغميضة
wedding	زفاف	traditional	تقليدي	ready	جاهز
popular	مشهور/ محبوب	exciting	شيق/ممتع	wide	واسع
Cheese rolling	لعبة دحرجة الجبن	travels	سفريات/ رحلات	weird	غريب
wonderful	رائع	traditions	تقاليد	hill	تل/ هضبة
funny	مضحك	strange	غريب	envelope	ظرف
amount	كمية/مقدار	messy	فوضوي	monsters	وحوش
silly	سخيف / غبي	mud	طين	La Tomatina	مهرجان الطماطم
alive	حي (على قيد الحياة)	Ful Medames	فول مدمس	Basbousa	بسبوسة
karate	كاراتيه	special	مميز	country	دولة/بلد
history	تاريخ	rich	غني	culture	ثقافة
olive oil	زيت الزيتون	garlic	ثوم	sweet	حلو
semolina	دقيق السميد	syrup	شراب السكر	helpful	متعاون
hospitable	مضياف	Sinai region	منطقة سيناء	authors	مؤلفون
information	معلومات	invitation	دعوة	address	عنوان
missing	مفقود	road	طريق	school yard	ساحة المدرسة

Unit 10

English	Arabic	English	Arabic	English	Arabic
message	يراسل/ رسالة	chat	يحادث/ محادثة	password	كلمة المرور
do research	يجري بحثًا	log in	يقوم بتسجيل الدخول	chameleon	حرباء
website	موقع إلكتروني	amazing	مذهل	presentation	عرض تقديمي
respectful	محترم/ متسم بالاحترام	safe	آمن	social media	وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي
creative	مبدع	personal information	معلومات شخصية	bullying	التنمر
online	عبر الإنترنت	devices	أجهزة	ideas	أفكار
thoughts	آراء / أفكار	pros	إيجابيات	cons	سلبيات
interesting	مثير	scary	مخيف	secret	سر / سري
strong	قوي	stupid	غبي	quickly	بسرعة
late	متأخر	ugly	قبيح	neighbor	جار
computer games	ألعاب كمبيوتر	problem	مشكلة	unhealthy	غير صحي
restaurant	مطعم	son	ابن	apartment	شقة
together	معًا	team	فريق	leaflet	منشور
poster	ملصق	reason	سبب	screen	شاشة
problem	مشكلة	prize	جائزة	headings	عناوين



Practice on Vocabulary Units 9 & 10

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. A/An .... writes movies and stories. الشرقية – إدارة منيا القمح 2024
   a) player b) author c) visitor d) doctor
2. To play "Pass the parcel", we need ....
   a) food b) chairs c) presents d) seeker
3. The player who .... the present keeps it.
   a) unwraps b) eats c) reads d) wraps
4. When we play "Musical chairs", we run .... the chairs.
   a) in b) around c) on d) under
5. We need a .... place to play "Hide and seek".
   a) small b) dark c) white d) wide
6. I'm .... of the history of my country. الشرقية – إدارة منيا القمح 2024
   a) famous b) proud c) kind d) read.
7. Basbousa is a thin, sweet semolina cake with .... الدقهلية – إدارة نبروه 2024
   a) cheese b) beans c) syrup d) water
8. In La Tomatina, everybody is .... in red tomatoes.
   a) found b) put c) covered d) won
9. There isn't enough water in the .... It's a dry place. بنى سويف 2024
   a) desert b) forest c) river d) mountain
10. People in Egypt are very .... to visitors. الإسماعيلية 2024
    a) silly b) boring c) hospitable d) scary
11. I hurt my hand. It is ....
    a) helpful b) beautiful c) pain d) painful
12. Basbousa is very .... الجيزة 2024
    a) salty b) sweet c) bad d) fast
13. You must be .... when you cross the road.
    a) careful b) caring c) care d) cared
14. Remember to be .... Don't copy information.
    a) noisy b) painful c) helpful d) respectful
15. Are you making a/an .... about chameleons?
    a) password b) website c) presentation d) information
16. Social media has pros and .... البحر الأحمر – إدارة الغردقة 2024
    a) reasons b) verbs c) prizes d) cons

17 A: Did you do your .... on your tablet? B: Yes, I did.

a) library b) research c) color d) dress

18 I like to use .... media.

a) special b) social c) gifts d) calm

19 We can .... ideas and thoughts on social media.

a) log in b) contact c) share d) bully

20 I played .... with my friends. القاهرة 2024

a) food b) games c) jobs d) drink

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

A

players – south – snows – green – desert

Many people think that Egypt is only a desert. It's true that about 90% of Egypt is a ....(1)......., but we also have green lands. Near the Nile, it's ....(2)....... and beautiful. There are mountains in the ....(3)....... and east of Egypt. It even ....(4)....... in the Sinai region.

B

mix – delicious – bad – culture – beans

الدقهلية – إدارة ميت غمر 2024

Egypt is famous for its rich ....(1)....... and delicious dishes. Ful Medames is a famous Egyptian dish. Egyptian people ate it thousands of years ago. It's ....(2)....... cooked slowly and served with lots of olive oil and garlic. You can ....(3)....... it with lemon juice, onions, and salt. It's very ....(4)....... .

C

food – friends – number – strong – secret

دمياط – إدارة دمياط الجديدة 2024

It is important to stay safe online. You should keep your password ....(1)....... . You shouldn't tell everyone your phone ....(2)....... . You shouldn't make new ....(3)....... online with people you don't know. You should use a ....(4)....... password. Don't bully people online.

D

research – devices – homework – world – have

Social media has an important role in our life. Social media helps all people around the ....(1)....... . People can use computers and other ....(2)....... to share their ideas. Children can use social media to ....(3)....... fun. Scientists can use social media to do ....(4)....... .



B) Revision on Grammar



A) The Past Simple Tense زمن الماضى البسيط

1. Regular verbs: أفعال منتظمة:

Subject (الفاعل) + (inf.) الفعل فى المصدر + (ed/d/ied) ... .

e.g. We celebrated Ahmed's birthday yesterday.

2. Irregular verbs: أفعال غير منتظمة:

Subject (الفاعل) + التصريف الثانى للفعل ... .

e.g. Eslam bought a new car last week.

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past	Present		Past
see	يرى	saw	run	يجرى	ran	fall	يسقط	fell
win	يفوز	won	fly	يطير	flew	give	يعطى	gave
tell	يخبر	told	have	يملك	had	say	يقول	said
throw	يلقى (يرمى)	threw	wear	يرتدى	wore	buy	يشترى	bought
make	يصنع	made	forget	ينسى	forgot	go	يذهب	went
come	يأتى	came	write	يكتب	wrote	bring	يجلب/ يحضر	brought

B) Making adjectives by adding (-ful)

يمكن تكوين الصفة بإضافة (ful -) إلى نهاية الاسم أو الفعل.

noun or verb + (-ful) = adjective

care	يعتنى	→	careful	حريص	pain	ألم	→	painful	مؤلم
help	يساعد	→	helpful	متعاون	wonder	يتعجب	→	wonderful	رائع
use	يستخدم	→	useful	مفيد	color	لون	→	colorful	ملون
beauty	جمال	→	beautiful	جميل					





Giving advice:

إعطاء النصيحة:

should:

We use "should" to talk about what we think is right to do.

نستخدم «يجب أن» للتحدث عما نعتقد أنه من الصحيح القيام به.

Subject (الفاعل) + should + (inf.) الفعل فى المصدر ... .



I should turn my phone off at night.

يجب أن أطفئ هاتفى ليلًا.

e.g. You should keep your password secret.



shouldn't:

We use "shouldn't" to talk about what we think is wrong to do.

نستخدم «يجب ألا» للتحدث عما نعتقد أنه من الخطأ القيام به.

Subject (الفاعل) + shouldn't + inf. (الفعل فى المصدر) ....



I shouldn't use my phone late at night.

يجب ألا أستخدم هاتفى فى وقت متأخر من الليل.

e.g. You shouldn't share your photos with people you don't know.





on Grammar Units 9 & 10

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Last week, Ali .... his uncle.
   a) visit b) visits c) visited d) visiting
2. The book was .... It gave me the information I needed.
   a) use b) uses c) to use d) useful
3. Nada .... her friend at the festival last month.
   a) meet b) meets c) meeting d) met
4. Hala's dress is .... We all love it.
   a) colorful b) color c) coloring d) colors
5. He hurt his leg. It was ....
   a) pain b) paining c) painful d) pains
6. I looked up and .... birds, dragons, and monsters.
   a) see b) sees c) seeing d) saw
7. They pushed the cheese and hundreds of people .... after it.
   a) ran b) runs c) running d) run
8. They .... a new bridge last year.
   a) build b) builds c) building d) built
9. The window was open and a bird .... into the room.
   a) fly b) flew c) flies d) flying
10. I didn't .... my keys.
    a) find b) finds c) found d) finding
11. We should .... proud of our country.
    a) be b) am c) is d) are
12. Children should .... playing after one hour.
    a) stop b) stopped c) stopping d) stops
13. You .... spend many hours on computers and tablets. It's unhealthy.
    a) are b) should c) shouldn't d) can
14. You should .... your personal information secret.
    a) keep b) keeps c) keeping d) kept
15. If you have a problem, you .... tell your parents.
    a) can't b) should c) shouldn't d) do

16 You .... help your family and friends.

a) can't b) am c) shouldn't d) should

17 We .... keep our school clean.

a) should b) need c) shouldn't d) needs

18 You .... drive too fast.

a) must b) need c) shouldn't d) should

19 Children shouldn't .... too many sweets.

a) eat b) eating c) eats d) ate

20 We .... bully people online.

a) should b) need c) are d) shouldn't

2 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1 He .... (have) a party last week. القاهرة – إدارة السلام 2024

2 Yesterday, we .... (go) to the club. بنى سويف 2024

3 She has a .... (color) dress.

4 The painting was really .... (beauty). الجيزة – إدارة الوراق 2024

5 The boat trip was .... (wonder).

6 She .... (drink) some juice at the party yesterday.

7 She didn't .... (got) up early yesterday.

8 Last week, they .... (see) some old videos.

9 Rana .... (wear) a nice dress last night.

10 I hurt my leg. It's very .... (pain).

11 This website is very .... (use).

12 Children shouldn't .... (drank) much coffee. الشرقية 2024

13 We shouldn't .... (used) our phones late at night.

14 You should .... (keeping) your password secret. بورسعيد 2024

15 I should .... (helping) my friends.

16 You should .... (eats) healthy food.

17 I'm very .... (care) when I go online.

18 You .... (shouldn't) stay safe online. الجيزة 2024

19 I .... (should) give my password to anyone. الفيوم 2024

20 You shouldn't .... (sharing) your personal information online.



Unit 11

rail	سكة حديد	station	محطة	safe	آمن
airport	مطار	vehicle	مركبة	road	طريق
bus	أتوبيس	land	أرض	helmet	خوذة
boat	قارب	public	عام	seat belt	حزام أمان
plane	طائرة	late	متأخر	light	ضوء
left	يسار	safety	أمان / سلامة	hospital	مستشفى
right	يمين	motorbike	دراجة بخارية	middle	منتصف
camel	جمل	crosswalk	ممر مشاة	shocked	مصدوم
straight	مستقيم	ambulance	سيارة إسعاف	scared	خائف
safely	بأمان	pollution	تلوث	chemicals	مواد كيميائية
dangerous	خطير	rice straw	قش الأرز	dirty	قذر
electric buses	أتوبيسات تعمل بالكهرباء	photosynthesis	عملية البناء الضوئى	asthma	مرض الربو
shade	ظل	energy-saving	موفرة للكهرباء	balcony	شرفة / بلكونة
lightbulbs	مصابيح	traffic	حركة المرور	fresh air	هواء نقى
apartment	شقة	important	هام	truck	شاحنة

Unit 12 (Story)

village	قرية	wheat	قمح	irrigation canal	قناة الرى
flour	دقيق	maize	ذرة	baladi bread	خبز بلدى
cookies	بسكويت	trash	قمامة	plastic bottles	زجاجات بلاستيكية
interesting	شيق	important	مهم	delicious	لذيذ
problem	مشكلة	simple	بسيط	call	ينادى/ يتصل
social media	وسائل التواصل الاجتماعى	main square	الميدان الرئيسى	household things	أغراض منزلية
deep	عميق	polluted	ملوثة	produce	ينتج
fields	حقول	awesome	رائع	changes	تغيرات
proud	فخور	agriculture	الزراعة	blocked with	مسدود بـ



Practice on Vocabulary Units 11 & 12

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Cars go on ....
   a) rails b) air c) water d) roads
2. I can't travel by .... I don't like traveling on water.
   a) trains b) ships c) cars d) planes
3. You need a .... on your bike.
   a) hat b) cap c) seat belt d) helmet
4. You can't .... your bike here.
   a) ride b) drive c) build d) look
5. When you .... the road, look left and right.
   a) make b) park c) build d) cross
6. You can go straight and .... right.
   a) ride b) turn c) build d) find
7. My grandma is very .... She always gives me sweets.
   a) dangerous b) kind c) sad d) boring
8. When I saw the lion, I was ....
   a) hungry b) scared c) beautiful d) delicious
9. We called the .... to help the sick woman.
   a) school b) bank c) ambulance d) bakery
10. Trains move on a/an ....
    a) road b) water c) rail d) air
11. It's important to be .... on the road. الفيوم 2024
    a) angry b) excited c) unsafe d) safe
12. Renewable energy keeps the air ....
    a) dirty b) clean c) polluted d) dangerous
13. Cars put .... into the air and cause air pollution.
    a) chemicals b) water c) solar power d) bikes
14. The chemicals in the air are .... بورسعيد 2024
    a) nice b) healthy c) safe d) dangerous
15. My dad has a .... in his car to drive safely. القاهرة - إدارة الزاوية 2024
    a) chair b) seat belt c) helmet d) bike
16. We plant trees to give us .... on sunny days.
    a) tea b) heat c) shade d) ideas

17 Air pollution is very dangerous for people who have ....
a) food   b) asthma   c) water   d) money

18 The polluted air is ....
a) dirty   b) clean   c) worried   d) healthy

19 My grandpa is a farmer. He works with ....
a) agriculture   b) computers   c) clothes   d) festivals

20 When I .... up, I want to be a doctor.
a) stand   b) grow   c) look   d) get

21 Wheat, maize, and rice are ....
a) people   b) devices   c) signs   d) crops

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

A share – dangerous – walk – lightbulbs – metro

دمياط 2024

Last week, my teacher was talking about air pollution. She gave us some ideas to stop air pollution. We can have energy-saving ....(1)............ in our apartments. We can use means of transportation such as buses and the ....(2)............ . Also, we can sometimes ....(3)............ a car with a friend. If you're going to a nearby place, you can ....(4)............ .

B seat belt – helmet – cross – left – wear

القاهرة 2024

We need to be safe on the roads. We must wait for the green light and listen for cars before we ....(1)............ the street. We must look right and ....(2)............ . Then we cross the road at the crosswalk. We need a ....(3)............ in our cars and a ....(4)............ on our bikes. We must follow road signs.

C roads – through – transportation – rails – on

There are many forms of ....(1)............ in my city. There are cars and buses that move on ....(2)............ . When we go by trains or metros, we are on ....(3)............ . When we go by planes, we go ....(4)............ the air. When we go by boats or ships, we are on water.

D travel – rides – work – plane – walking

أسيوط 2024

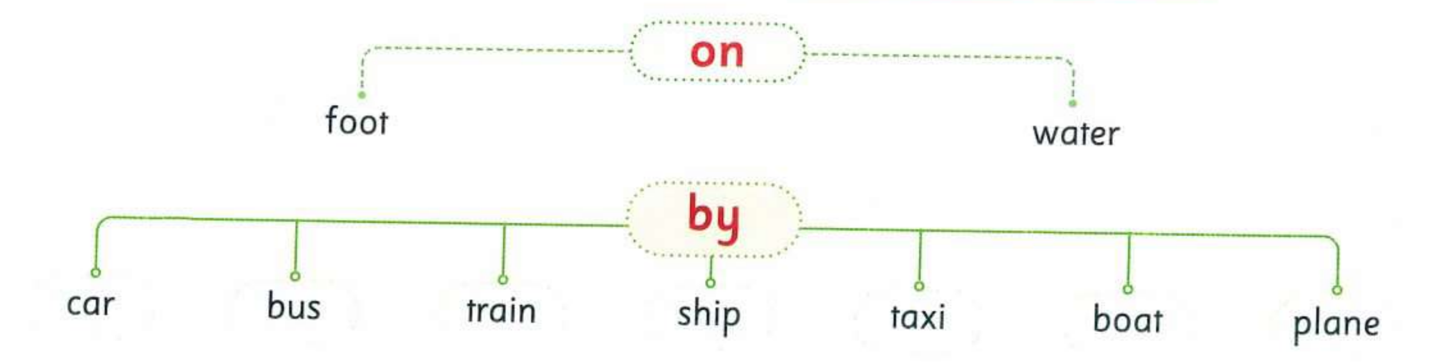
My name is Hana. I go to school on foot. I love ....(1)............ . My school is near my house. My father goes to ....(2)............ by car. My brother ....(3)............ his bike to school. My mom takes a taxi. We usually ....(4)............ to Aswan by train.

Unit 11 B) Revision on Grammar



Unit 11

A) Prepositions with means of transportation
حروف الجر مع وسائل النقل والمواصلات



B) need / need to يحتاج / يحتاج أن

نستخدم «need» عندما يكون هناك شيء مهم أو ضروري.

Subject (فاعل) + need/s + noun (اسم) ... .

e.g. She needs a green light to cross the road.

Subject (فاعل) + need/s to + (inf.) الفعل فى المصدر ... .

e.g. They need to wait for the bus.

C) must / mustn't يجب / لا يجب

نستخدم «must» أو «mustn't» لإعطاء نصيحة قوية.

Subject فاعل + must / mustn't + (inf.) الفعل فى المصدر ... .

e.g. She must stop here and wait for a green light.

e.g. You mustn't cross the road when the light is red.



on Grammar Unit 11

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 She needs to .... a helmet on her bike.
a) wear b) wears c) wore d) wearing

2 I need .... much water.
a) drink b) drinks c) drank d) to drink

3 We travel to Aswan .... train.
a) in b) on c) to d) by

4 You .... listen to your parents.
a) can't b) mustn't c) shouldn't d) must

5 You need .... new shoes.
a) buy b) buys c) to buy d) buying

6 You must .... your room.
a) clean b) to clean c) cleans d) cleaning

2 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1 You must .... (follows) road signs. القليوبية - إدارة بنها 2024

2 You .... (must) run on roads. الجيزة - إدارة البدرشين 2024

3 I go to work .... (by) foot. بورسعيد 2024

4 You need .... (in) look left and right to cross the road. القاهرة - إدارة الشروق 2024

5 We travel .... (at) motorbike.

6 We need to .... (ate) healthy food.

7 She traveled to Cairo .... (in) bus.

8 You need to .... (creates) a password.

9 We travel on water .... (at) boat.

10 You need to .... (wore) a jacket. It's very cold outside.

11 We .... (need to) a green light to cross the road.

12 I hurt my leg. I need to .... (went) to the hospital.

13 I love traveling with my family .... (on) plane.

14 Cars and buses move .... (under) the road. القاهرة - إدارة السلام 2024

15 You need to .... (wearing) a seat belt in a car. الشرقية 2024

16 I love traveling .... (in) water.

17 She .... (need) a new dress for the party.

18 You must .... (to cross) the road on the crosswalk. أسيوط 2024

19 You need to .... (going) straight.

20 We .... (must) eat or talk in the library.



Conjugation of Verbs

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
sound	يبدو	sounded	guess	يخمن	guessed
decide	يقرر	decided	check	يفحص/ يراجع	checked
live	يعيش	lived	cross	يعبر	crossed
wonder	يتعجب	wondered	start	يبدأ	started
wait	ينتظر	waited	bury	يدفن	buried
prepare	يجهز	prepared	cover	يغطى	covered
stay	يبقى	stayed	remember	يتذكر	remembered
walk	يمشى	walked	carry	يحمل	carried
study	يذاكر	studied	cry	يبكى/ يصرخ	cried
celebrate	يحتفل	celebrated	play	يلعب	played
want	يريد	wanted	fast	يصوم	fasted
pray	يصلى	prayed	happen	يحدث	happened
love	يحب	loved	decorate	يزين	decorated
stop	يتوقف	stopped	wrap	يغلف	wrapped
join	ينضم	joined	need	يحتاج	needed
count	يعد	counted	close	يغلق	closed
wish	يتمنى	wished	push	يدفع	pushed
continue	يستمر	continued	pull	يسحب	pulled
change	يغير	changed	cook	يطبخ	cooked
chat	يحادث	chatted	create	ينشئ	created
plan	يخطط	planned	message	يراسل	messaged
talk	يتكلم	talked	copy	ينسخ	copied
tag	يضع علامة/ يشير إلى	tagged	share	يشارك	shared
accept	يوافق	accepted	contact	يتواصل	contacted
ask	يسأل	asked	bully	يتنمر	bullied
solve	يحل	solved	agree	يوافق	agreed
interview	يجرى مقابلة	interviewed	answer	يجيب	answered
travel	يسافر	traveled	need	يحتاج	needed
turn	ينعطف	turned	pollute	يلوث	polluted
park	يركن	parked	call	يتصل/ ينادى	called
follow	يتبع	followed	breathe	يتنفس	breathed
cough	يكح - يسعل	coughed	allow	يسمح	allowed
increase	يزيد	increased	use	يستخدم	used

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
bring	يُحضر	brought	know	يعرف	knew
think	يعتقد/ يفكر	thought	choose	يختار	chose
grow up	ينمو	grew up	dig	يحفر	dug
say	يقول	said	find	يجد	found
give	يعطى	gave	come	يأتى	came
catch	يمسك / يلحق بـ	caught	run	يجرى	ran
sit	يجلس	sat	learn	يتعلم	learnt
drive	يقود سيارة	drove	have	يمتلك/ يتناول	had
feel	يشعر	felt	eat	يأكل	ate
drink	يشرب	drank	swim	يعوم/ يسبح	swam
see	يرى	saw	sing	يغنى	sang
buy	يشترى	bought	sleep	ينام	slept
spend	يقضى	spent	throw	يلقي/ يرمى	threw
hold	يمسك	held	keep	يحتفظ بـ	kept
put	يضع	put	hide	يختبئ	hid
seek	يبحث	sought	become	يصبح	became
understand	يفهم	understood	hurt	يؤذى / يؤلم	hurt
win	يفوز	won	wear	يرتدى	wore
do	يفعل	did	get	يحصل على	got
write	يكتب	wrote	meet	يقابل	met
go	يذهب	went	ride	يركب	rode
fall	يسقط / يقع	fell	hear	يسمع	heard
burn	يحرق	burnt	cut	يقطع	cut

Final Exams

الامتحانات معدلة طبقًا لأحدث مواصفات



خاص بجميع نصوص الاستماع لكل الامتحانات

Exam 1 محافظة القاهرة - إدارة روض الفرج





Listening

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: (4)

1. My father says that his mom and dad drove .... cars.
   a) toy b) modern c) electric d) gas
2. Gas cars were very ....
   a) quiet b) noisy c) good d) clean
3. The town had a shopping area, but it was very ....
   a) far b) new c) old d) modern
4. My dad worked in a bookstore on ....
   a) Sundays b) Mondays c) Tuesdays d) Saturdays

Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: (2)

1. Don't .... information. Find ideas and write your own words.
   a) make b) copy c) read d) do
2. We must respect the .... when we play.
   a) rides b) roles c) rules d) ropes

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: (2)

games – bully – homework – night – personal

When I am online, I am very careful. I can talk to my friends and family. I should keep my ....(1).......... information secret. I can play ....(2).......... . I can find information for my ....(3).......... . I should turn my phone off at ....(4).......... .





4 Read the text and answer the questions:



Last week, we had a very special party. It was my mother's birthday. My mom was 40 years old. All my family came together to celebrate. There was lots of food. I played games with my cousins. I ate a big slice of chocolate cake and drank a carton of orange juice. We ran and threw a ball. We were happy. It was a special day.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 My mother was .... years old.
a) sixty b) fifty c) forty d) eighty

2 I drank a carton of .... juice.
a) apple b) pineapple c) guava d) orange

B Answer the following questions:

3 When did they have a special day? ....

4 Who came to celebrate? ....

Writing

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

8

1 We .... (find) a metal box in the ground last year.

2 Students should .... (studies) hard.

3 She goes to the cinema .... (on) bus.

4 I hurt my leg. It's very .... (pain).

6 Punctuate the following:

2

how do you go to school

....

7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements:

7

"A trip to the sea"

last week – Alex – enjoyed

....

....

....



Listening

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: (4)

1. The Nile is the .... river in the world.
   a) shortest b) smallest c) longest d) widest
2. That's like traveling to the center of the ....
   a) earth b) sky c) moon d) sun
3. The Nile has .... branches in Egypt.
   a) three b) two c) five d) one
4. The Nile crocodile is one of the largest ....
   a) insects b) fish c) birds d) reptiles

Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: (2)

1. The crocodile is .... and scary.
   a) huge b) nice c) sad d) happy
2. I played .... with my cousins.
   a) foods b) games c) jobs d) drinks

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: (2)

secret – accept – play – password – careful

There are some rules we should follow when we use social media. When you use social media, you should be ....(1)....... . You should ....(2)....... to be friends only with people you know. You should keep your password ....(3)......., you shouldn't give your ....(4)....... to anyone who asks.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:



Cities have many cars. Cars make air pollution. They put chemicals into the air. We can't always see the chemicals, but they are dangerous. Some cities are trying to stop air pollution. In London, England, parents do not drive children to school. The children walk or cycle to school. In China, they have electric buses. These buses do not make air pollution.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. The general idea of the text is about ....
   a) food b) snow c) air pollution d) stars
2. In England, children go to school by ....
   a) bikes b) cars c) planes d) trains

B Answer the following questions:

3. How do cars make air pollution? ....
4. What does China do to stop air pollution? ....

Writing

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

8

1. You should .... (going) to bed early.
2. I .... (buy) a present for my friend yesterday.
3. Do you want a slice .... (on) cake?
4. Eating too much chocolate is .... (healthy).

6 Punctuate the following:

2

we have a great culture in Egypt

....

7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements:

7

"Chameleons"

interesting – color – eyes

....

....

....







1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: (4)

1. .... is a Muslim festival.

   a) Christmas b) Eid Al-Fitr c) Sham El-Nessim d) Shawwal

2. The month before Eid is called ....

   a) Shawwal b) Ramadan c) April d) March

3. In Ramadan, Muslims .... during the day.

   a) run b) walk c) study d) fast

4. People don't eat or drink until ....

   a) morning b) sunset c) afternoon d) night

Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: (2)

1. She usually has three .... of cheese for breakfast.

   a) bars b) bottles c) pieces d) cartons

2. The Nile is the .... river.

   a) widest b) longest c) shortest d) tallest

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: (2)

stand – out – chairs – run – stops

My favorite party game is "Musical chairs." If there are 6 players, you only need 5 ....(1).............. . The players play some music and ....(2)............ around the chairs. When the music ....(3).............., everyone sits down. The players without chairs are ....(4).......... .

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

5

Sham El-Nessim is a celebration of spring; we can do lots of things during this celebration. We can play in the parks, color eggs, go on a picnic, and eat salted fish. Sham El-Nessim is a festival for Egyptians. Egyptians get together to have fun and celebrate Sham El-Nessim.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Sham El-Nessim is a celebration of ....
   a) winter b) summer c) autumn d) spring
2. We color .... during Sham El-Nessim.
   a) apples b) eggs c) candies d) cakes

B Answer the following questions:

3. What do we eat during Sham El-Nessim? ....
4. Why do Egyptians get together during Sham El-Nessim? ....

Writing

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

8

1. Last week, they .... (see) some old videos.
2. He wants a .... (packet) of soap.
3. We need to .... (looking) left and right.
4. They often travel .... (on) car.

6 Punctuate the following:

2

how do you go to school

....

7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements:

7

"Air pollution"

dangerous – chemicals – cough

....

....

....

Exam 4 محافظة الجيزة - إدارة الحوامدية 30



Listening

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: 4

1. The Nile gives us .... to drink and grow food.
   a) milk b) juice c) water d) tea
2. The Nile is the .... river in the world.
   a) shortest b) longest c) thinnest d) smallest
3. The Nile has .... branches in Egypt.
   a) one b) two c) three d) four
4. The Nile is home for different kinds of fish, birds, and ....
   a) turtles b) lions c) monkeys d) foxes

Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: 2

1. I ate a .... of cake.
   a) bottle b) bar c) slice d) carton
2. The dress is .... It's amazing.
   a) careful b) helpful c) colorful d) painful

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: 2

happy – swim – park – yogurt – delicious

When it is hot, I go out. I like to drink orange juice. It is very ....(1).......... . My brother likes to go to the beach. I like to go to the beach, too. We ....(2).......... in the sea. We eat frozen ....(3).......... . We feel very ....(4).......... at the end of the day.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

5

When we get together with our friends to celebrate something like a birthday or a wedding, the children often play party games. Musical chairs is an interesting game. You can run, but be ready to sit. You need four chairs when you have five players. Play some music and run around the chairs. When the music stops, everyone sits down. The player without a chair is out; take away one chair and play again.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 The general idea of the text is about party ....

a) cakes b) juice c) cats d) games

2 When the music stops, everyone ....

a) sleeps b) runs c) sits down d) walks

B Answer the following questions:

3 What do children do when they are together? ....

4 How many chairs do you need for 5 players? ....

Writing

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

8

1 I .... (play) football yesterday.

2 You .... (shouldn't) help your mother.

3 When did you .... (visited) your grandpa?

4 I like the park very much. It is .... (wonder).

6 Punctuate the following:

2

we travel to Aswan by train

....

7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements:

7

"Computer games"

many hours – do their homework – unhealthy

....

....

....



Exam 5 محافظة القليوبية - إدارة الخانكة التعليمية

30



Listening

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

4

1. To play "Pass the parcel," wrap a ....

   a) present b) game c) chair d) box

2. We need .... to play "Pass and parcel."

   a) book b) ball c) music d) basket

3. Players give the present to the .... person.

   a) next b) out c) seeker d) last

4. The player who .... the present keeps it.

   a) wraps b) unwraps c) covers d) hides

Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

2

1. We need to create a .... to log into the school website.

   a) message b) chat c) password d) research

2. We are .... a history project in school about our town.

   a) making b) doing c) driving d) playing

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

2

supermarket – bottles – slices – soap – bought

Hana and her family went to the ....(1).......... yesterday. They ....(2).......... many things. Hana bought two ....(3).......... of milk. Hana's mom bought two bars of ....(4).........., two pieces of cheese, and a packet of cookies.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: (5)

Last week, Samy visited his grandpa in Tanta, where he lives. He took the train there. When he arrived, Grandpa met him at the train station. Samy's grandpa was very happy and excited. He showed Samy around the city. Grandpa told Samy that Tanta was very quiet when he was young. There weren't many cars or shops. Now, life is different. There are many cars on the roads. There are many shops and big shopping malls, too.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 Samy took the .... to Tanta.

a) car b) taxi c) train d) bus

2 Samy's Grandpa was very ....

a) sad b) happy c) tired d) nervous

B Answer the following questions:

3 Where did Grandpa meet Samy? ....

4 How is life in Tanta now? ....

Writing

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets: (8)

1 How many kids .... (be) at the party yesterday?

2 You should .... (kept) your password secret.

3 Some computer games can be .... (help).

4 The Nile .... (have) two branches in Egypt.

6 Punctuate the following: (2)

Sham El-Nessim is egypt's oldest festival

....

7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements: (7)

"What makes Egypt special?"

proud of – Egyptian people – wonderful food

....

....

....





1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

4

1 The chameleon is a kind of ....

a) fish b) plants c) reptiles d) birds

2 They can change ....

a) shape b) size c) body d) color

3 They have amazing ....

a) eyes b) legs c) arms d) teeth

4 They eat insects and ....

a) trees b) leaves c) birds d) fish

Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

2

1 I wear a .... when I ride my bike.

a) shirt b) cap c) jacket d) helmet

2 I need a .... of water.

a) piece b) bottle c) bar d) slice

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

2

train – city – catch – seeds – mouse

The city mouse visited the country mouse in his hole in the ground. The country ....(1).......... was pleased. He gave his friend grass and ....(2).......... . The ....(3).......... mouse said, "Thank you." The city mouse stopped eating and ran to catch the eight o'clock ....(4).......... .

4 Read the text and answer the questions:


5

I'm Amir. I live in a big city in Egypt with my family. The city life is always noisy and crowded. It has a lot of pretty, bright lights, but smoke and noise are everywhere. In summer, we visit our grandpa in the country. It is always quiet. There are a lot of trees and grass. Life is slow. I love the country more than the city because it is quiet and clean.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 Amir lives in a big .... in Egypt.

a) town b) village c) farm d) city

2 Amir visits Grandpa in ....

a) spring b) winter c) summer d) fall

B Answer the following questions:

3 How is life in the city? ....

4 Why does Amir like the country more? ....

Writing

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

8

1 You shouldn't .... (tells) anyone your password.

2 I .... (see) a nice show yesterday.

3 You need .... (in) look left and right.

4 Where did Ahmed .... (went) last year?

6 Punctuate the following:

2

They live in alexandria

....

7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements:

7

"My first day at school"

nervous – put on – teacher

....

....

....





Listening

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

4

1. It's important to be .... on the road.
   a) good b) safe c) bad d) early
2. Yon need to .... right and left.
   a) see b) eat c) look d) visit
3. Yon need a .... on your bike.
   a) car b) bus c) boat d) helmet
4. You need a .... light to cross the road.
   a) green b) red c) black d) yellow

Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

2

1. My grandpa is a farmer. He lives in a ....
   a) desert b) village c) city d) river
2. We have energy-saving .... in our apartment.
   a) cars b) lightbulbs c) plants d) ovens

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

2

country – smoke – lights – noisy – like

My best friend is called Hani. He lives in the city. The city is full of bright .....(1)..... . But the air is filled with .....(2)..... . It's very .....(3)..... in the city. I don't like it when I visit the city. I prefer to live in the .....(4)..... . There are few sounds and smells in the country.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:



Yesterday, we had a picnic in the park. We went on foot because it was near our house. We took some sandwiches and sweets. We played a lot there. We played "Hide and seek." I was the seeker, and they were the players. We ran and laughed a lot. Then we sat under a tree to eat our sandwiches and drink the juice. We returned home in the evening.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 They had a picnic in the ....

a) garden b) farm c) park d) city

2 They drank ....

a) tea b) coffee c) sandwiches d) juice

B Answer the following questions:

3 What did they play? ....

4 Where did they sit? ....

Writing

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

8

1 .... (Do) you visit your friend last week?

2 They had two .... (packet) of cookies.

3 I fell over and broke my arm. It's very .... (pain).

4 I shouldn't .... (telling) everyone my phone number.

6 Punctuate the following:

2

people can take your personal information

....

7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements:

7

"A day at the beach."

– When did you go to the beach? – How did you go to the beach?
– What did you do on the beach?

....

....

....





Listening

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: 4

1 Grandpa's village was very ....

a) polluted b) noisy c) dark d) quiet

2 There were no .... in the past.

a) children b) people c) cars d) books

3 Now, there are a lot of .... and cars.

a) tablets b) trucks c) televisions d) pencils

4 Grandpa was eight when he buried the .... of memories.

a) box b) bag c) packet d) bottle

Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: 2

1 We go to school on foot. We always .... to school.

a) cycle b) walk c) fly d) drive

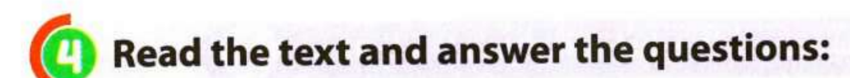
2 When I travel by ...., I go through the air.

a) bus b) plane c) boat d) car

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: 2

kind – bus – wake – friends – ask

I go to school every day. I ....(1).......... up early. I go to school by ....(2).......... . I meet my ....(3).......... and we play and study. Our teachers are ....(4).......... . They teach us math and English. I go home in the afternoon, and I do my homework in the evening.



4 Read the text and answer the questions:



People say that computer games are bad for children. Children spend many hours on their computers or tablets. They look at the screen, and they don't go outside or do their homework. Parents say this is not healthy. But sometimes computer games are good for children because they need to solve problems in some games. Some computer games need teams, so children make friends and play with their family.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 "............................" means father and mother.
a) Children b) Problems c) Games d) Parents

2 Computer games are sometimes .... for children.
a) good b) hot c) angry d) cold

B Answer the following questions:

3 Why are computer games bad for children? ....

4 How can computer games be useful for children? ....

Writing

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

8

1 I went to the park yesterday and I .... (fly) the kite.

2 Naglaa's dress is .... (beauty).

3 We visited the Egyptian Museum last week. We .... (was) very happy.

4 We should .... (turns) our phones off at night.

6 Punctuate the following:

2

what games did Ali play yesterday

....

7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements:

7

"A birthday party"

special day – chocolate cake – huge picnic

....

....

....



Listening

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: 4

1 Last ...., we went to Damietta.

a) weekend b) year c) day d) month

2 Grandpa and grandma live .... the sea.

a) under b) in c) on d) by

3 We .... in the water.

a) read b) swam c) wrote d) slept

4 Grandpa caught a ....

a) dog b) snake c) fish d) shoes

Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: 2

1 People in Egypt are very .... to visitors.

a) silly b) boring c) hospitable d) scary

2 To be safe online, I should have a .... password.

a) known b) short c) strong d) weak

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: 2

grow – longest – eat – south – drinking

The River Nile is one of the most important rivers in the world. It's the ....(1).......... river in the world and it comes from the ....(2).......... to the north, it is the main source of ....(3).......... water, and it is used to ....(4).......... crops.



4 Read the text and answer the questions:



My name is Youssef. Yesterday, I stayed at home and watched an interesting program with my dad. They talked about the reptiles' life. I was amazed when I saw the chameleons because they can change their color as the place where they are. I asked my dad to help me log into safe websites. My dad showed me how to create a password to find any information and advised me to be respectful and not to copy them. I found many pictures and shared them with my friends.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 They watched a program about ....

a) plants b) oceans c) reptiles d) food

2 Youssef shared .... with his friends.

a) books b) pictures c) videos d) games

B Answer the following questions:

3 Why was Youssef amazed when he saw the chameleons? ....

4 What did his father advise him to do? ....

Writing

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

8

1 We .... (shouldn't) be proud of our country.

2 Some people can .... (bullying) you.

3 My mother goes to work .... (on) taxi.

4 .... (Do) you go to school yesterday?

6 Punctuate the following:

2

i need to wear a jacket

....

7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements:

7

"How to be safe online"

secret and strong password – accept to be friends – share photos

....

....

....



Exam 10 محافظة السويس - توجيه اللغة الإنجليزية 30



1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: (4)

1. It's important to be .... online.
   a) nervous b) happy c) worried d) safe
2. You should keep your .... secret.
   a) name b) computer c) password d) tablet
3. You should .... to be friends only with people you know.
   a) accept b) wait c) hide d) call
4. You shouldn't .... your personal information.
   a) contact b) share c) protect d) understand

Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: (2)

1. We should be .... of our beautiful country.
   a) angry b) sad c) proud d) plane
2. We called the .... to help the sick people.
   a) school b) bank c) ambulance d) bakery

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: (2)

tables – present – wedding – happy – baked

It was my birthday party. The party was at home. Mom ....(1).......... cakes for my birthday. She put sweets and juice on the ....(2).......... . Dad gave me a ....(3).......... . My friends came to the party. We had fun. We were very ....(4).......... .

4 Read the text and answer the questions:



I'm Noor. I'm in grade four. My father is a teacher. My mother is a teacher, too. I like playing games with my friends and with my family. I like playing Hide and seek. My brother Hani likes playing football. My friend Sami likes to play Pass the parcel game. We all play football in the club. It's important to be healthy. We should drink enough water and eat healthy food. Fruits and vegetables are very good for our health. We should also sleep well. We should sleep for eight hours.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 Noor is in grade ....

a) three b) four c) five d) six

2 Hani likes to play ....

a) Musical chairs b) Pass the parcel c) football d) basketball

B Answer the following questions:

3 What does Noor like to play? ....

4 How can they be healthy? ....

Writing

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets: 8

1 I .... (eat) pizza yesterday.

2 He goes to school .... (on) bus.

3 You need .... (of) look left and right when you cross a road.

4 You should .... (has) healthy food.

6 Punctuate the following: 2

how many chairs are there

....

7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements: 7

"Eid Al-Fitr in Egypt"

Kahk – Muslim festival – happy

....

....

....



Exam 11 محافظة أسيوط - إدارة منفلوط





Listening

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

4

1. Ful Medames is a very .... dish.
   a) heavy b) old c) new d) modern
2. It is served with lots of olive and ....
   a) garlic b) onion c) cheese d) sugar
3. It is traditional food in ....
   a) England b) Paris c) Egypt d) France
4. All people in Egypt like to eat ful for ....
   a) dinner b) snack c) lunch d) breakfast

Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

2

1. The country mouse lives in a .... in the garden.
   a) hole b) mountain c) city d) train
2. When we get together, we .... party games.
   a) wrap b) open c) play d) unwrap

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

2

take – make – roads – foot – rails

There are many types of transportation in my town. I live next to my school, so I go there on ....(1).................. . When I go to the other side of the town, I ....(2).................. the bus. Buses move on ....(3).................. . When I travel to Cairo, I go by train. Trains move on ....(4).......... .

4 Read the text and answer the questions:



Eid Al-Fitr is a Muslim festival. Eid happens on the first day of the 10th Islamic month, called Shawwal. The month starts when people see the new moon. Kahk are delicious cookies. People eat kahk to celebrate Eid Al-Fitr. They have nuts, sugar, and honey in them. Many families make kahk, but you can buy them from a bakery, too. People say "Eid Mubarak" to their friends. People go to the mosque to pray and spend time with their families.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 The 10th Islamic month is called ....

a) Ramadan b) May c) Shawwal d) June

2 People go to the .... to pray.

a) gardens b) parks c) clubs d) mosques

B Answer the following questions:

3 When is Eid Al-Fitr? ....

4 How do people celebrate Eid Al-Fitr? ....

Writing

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets: 8

1 Grandpa .... (were) eight years old when he buried his box.

2 You must .... (to follow) road signs.

3 Computers and tablets are very .... (use).

4 She .... (doesn't) watch TV yesterday.

6 Punctuate the following: 2

we are very hospitable people

....

7 Write a paragraph of EIGHTEEN (18) words using the following guiding elements: 7

"The Nile"

longest – branches – source of life

....

....

....



امتحانات الأزهر الشريف



Exam 1



Listening

1 Listen and choose the correct answer: 6

1. The Nile is the .... river in the world.
   (shortest – longest – smallest)
2. The Nile is .... for different kinds of fish.
   (house – flat – home)
3. The Nile crocodile is one of the largest ....
   (reptiles – fish – birds)



Language Functions

2 Read and complete the dialogue with the words: 8

slice – fun – carton – you

Maha: Did you have ......(1)...... at the party?
Reem : Yes, thank ......(2)...... .
Maha: What did you eat?
Reem : I had a ......(3)...... of cake.
Maha: Anything else?
Reem : I had a ......(4)...... of juice.



Reading Comprehension



3 Read the text and answer the questions: 10

A country like Egypt is famous for its history, and we should continue to celebrate its rich culture. Our Egyptian food is wonderful. The most famous Egyptian food is Ful Medames. More than half of Egyptians are under the age of thirty. Egyptian people are helpful to each other. We have authors who won important prizes. We have green lands near the Nile. We should be proud of our country.

A Answer the following questions:

1. What is Egypt famous for? ....
2. What is the most famous Egyptian food? ....



B Choose the correct answer:

3 Our Egyptian food is ....
(wonderful – bad – not good)

4 More than half of Egyptians are under the age of ....
(13 – 30 – 3)

5 We have .... lands near the Nile.
(yellow – red – green)

Vocabulary and Structures

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c:

8

1 We use the .... to make calls.
a) radio b) television c) cell phone

2 When I travel by ...., I go through the air.
a) plane b) bus c) ship

3 There .... no cars in the past.
a) was b) are c) were

4 I .... turn my phone off at night.
a) should not b) should c) do not

5 My dad gave me a .... on my birthday.
a) present b) chair c) park

6 I .... football yesterday.
a) play b) played c) playing

7 Can I have a .... of cake, please?
a) glass b) bottle c) piece

8 Adel goes to school .... car.
a) on b) by c) in

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

8

1 making – Are – about – a presentation – you – chameleons?

....

2 mouse – delighted – city – The – was.

....

3 a bakery – kahk– can – from – buy – You.

....

4 proud – should – of – be – We – country – our.

....





1 Listen and choose the correct answer:

6

1. The country mouse visited the city mouse in his ....
   (room – hole – yard)
2. The country mouse was ....
   (excited – sad – angry)
3. The city was pretty and full of ....
   (balls – lights – colors)



2 Read and complete the dialogue with the words:



When – party – Thursday – birthday

Ahmed : Why are you having a ....(1).............. ?
Mona : For my ....(2).............. .
Ahmed : ....(3).............. is the party?
Mona : It's on ....(4).............. .



Reading Comprehension

3 Read the text and answer the questions:



Many people think that social media is bad for us because we spend too much time on it. They also believe that we are not safe online. On the other hand, some people think that it's great and useful. Social media is a good thing, but we should be careful and stay safe online. Many people think that watching too much TV is not a good idea. It wastes our time because we can spend many hours watching it.

A Answer the following questions:

1. Why is social media bad for us? ....
2. What is bad about watching TV too much? ....

B Choose the correct answer:

3. The general idea of the text is about (air pollution – school subjects – social media).
4. The underlined word "useful" means (painful – helpful – careful).
5. We should be careful and stay (safe – dangerous – weak) online.



Vocabulary and Structures

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, or c:



1. I carry my .... and go to school.
   a) backpack b) game c) gate
2. I go to school .... foot.
   a) by b) on c) in
3. Ali drank a .... of water.
   a) bottle b) piece c) slice
4. My parents .... me a beautiful present on my last birthday.
   a) give b) giving c) gave
5. I like staying at home with my ....
   a) family b) school c) teachers
6. We should .... our school clean.
   a) keeps b) keeping c) keep
7. There are a lot of trees in the ....
   a) forest b) desert c) river
8. .... you go to the club yesterday?
   a) Do b) Did c) Does

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

8

1. can – You – fun – have.

   ....

2. the – girl – What – doing – is?

   ....

3. by – bus – goes – to – He – school.

   ....

4. should – a seat belt – We – wear.

   ....



امتحان خاص بطلاب الدمج





1 Read and choose the correct answer to complete the text:



out – music – play – run

I love to ....(1).................. party games like "Musical chairs." To play it, we need chairs and music. If you have seven players, you only need six chairs. Players ....(2)........... around the chairs. When the ....(3)........... stops, everyone sits down. The player without a chair is ....(4).................. .

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

6

1. You need to look left and ....
   a) write b) right c) night d) light
2. I played .... with my cousins.
   a) food b) jobs c) games d) drink
3. We color boiled .... in Sham El-Nessim.
   a) eggs b) apples c) fish d) oranges
4. "Hide and seek" is an exciting ....
   a) game b) sport c) place d) party

3 Read the text and answer the questions:



Our grandpa lived in a village many years ago. He loved his village very much. His village was very quiet. He liked green plants. Our grandpa visited our city last year. He was excited to visit the city, but he was sad to see a lot of cars and trucks in the city. The city is very noisy. He didn't like the city.



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Our grandpa lived in a .... many years ago.
   a) city b) town c) park d) village

2. He liked .... plants.
   a) red b) blue c) green d) black

3. He was .... to visit the city.
   a) excited b) sad c) bored d) unhappy

4. The city is very ....
   a) quiet b) noisy c) happy d) calm

(B) Writing

4 Choose the correct form of the following sentences from a, b, or c: (4)

1. delicious – Kahk – cookies – very – are.
   a) Kahk very are delicious cookies.
   b) cookies are kahk very delicious.
   c) Kahk are very delicious cookies.

2. pros – Social media – cons – and – has.
   a) Pros has social media and cons.
   b) Social media has pros and cons.
   c) Pros and cons has social media.

5 Order the following scrambled sentences to form a meaningful paragraph from a, b, c, or d: (6)

a) I have breakfast at seven o'clock. (   )

b) I go home at two o'clock. (   )

c) I get up at six o'clock. (   )

d) I go to school at eight o'clock. (   )

Tapescripts

يحتوى هذا الجزء على إجابات نصوص الاستماع الخاصة بالكتاب.

UNIT 7

Practice on Lesson 1

The Nile is home for different kinds of fish and birds. The Nile crocodile is one of the planet's largest reptiles. It is the second largest reptile in the world. It is between 3.5 - 6 m long.

Practice on Lesson 2

I visited my grandpa last week. He lives in a small village. The village was very quiet. He has an old metal box. He opened the old metal box. He has a lot of photos in the box.

Practice on Lesson 3

The city mouse visited the country mouse last week. The country mouse was pleased and excited. The two mice took the train to the city. The life in the city isn't good for the country mouse.

Test Yourself on Unit 7

I remember my first day of school. I put on a blue T-shirt, gray pants, and black shoes. I carried my backpack. My father drove me to school. At the school gate, I wanted to cry. I said goodbye and I walked into the classroom.

Al Azhar Corner

Grandpa's village was very quiet. There were no cars in the past. Now, there are a lot of trucks and cars. I like the village.

UNIT 8

Practice on Lesson 1

Yesterday was too hot. I drank two bottles of water. My sister drank a bottle of lemonade. My brother drank a carton of juice. I used a bar of soap to wash my face and hands.

Practice on Lesson 2

Last weekend we went to Damietta to see Grandma and Grandpa, who live by the sea. We swam in the water, which was deep and blue. We saw lots of fish, and an octopus, too!

Practice on Lesson 3

Eid Al-Fitr is a Muslim festival. The month before Eid is called Ramadan. Muslims fast in Ramadan. We eat kahk to celebrate Eid Al-Fitr. My mom makes kahk at the bakery.

Test yourself on Unit 8

Sham El-Nessim is a celebration of spring. We can do lots of things during this celebration. We can play in the parks, color eggs, go on picnics, and eat fish. Sham El-Nessim is a festival for Egyptians. Egyptians get together to have fun and celebrate Sham El-Nessim.

Al Azhar Corner

Two years ago, we had a very special party. All my family came together to celebrate. We had a huge picnic in our aunt's garden. We had fun.

UNIT 9

Practice on Lesson 1

To play "Pass the parcel," you need a present, music, and lots of paper. Wrap a small present with lots of paper. The players sit in a circle. Players pass the present to the next person as the music plays.

Practice on Lesson 3

Many people think that Egypt is only a desert. It's true that 90% of Egypt is desert, but we also have green lands. Near the Nile, it is green and beautiful. There are mountains in the south and east. It even snows in the Sinai region.

Test yourself on Unit 9

We make a lot of movies and many of them are famous. We have authors who won important prizes. We love sports. Ferial Abdelaziz is a famous karate player.



Al Azhar Corner

Egypt is a big country. It's famous for its history. The Egyptians are helpful and hospitable, so we should be proud of our country, Egypt.

UNIT 10

Practice on Lesson 1

The chameleon is a kind of reptiles. They're so interesting! They have amazing eyes. They can change their color as the place where they are. They eat insects and leaves.

Practice on Lesson 2

It's important to stay safe online. You should keep your password secret. You should keep your personal information secret. You should accept to be friends only with people you know.

Practice on Lesson 3

Amira's children love playing computer games. They don't do their homework. Playing computer games for a long time is unhealthy. They should stop playing after one hour.

Practice on Lessons 4 & 5

Many people say that computer games are bad for children. Children can spend many hours on their computers. But, on the other hand, in some games, children need to solve problems. Some computer games need teams, so children make friends and play with their family.

Test yourself on Unit 10

It's important to be safe online. You should keep your password secret. You should accept to be friends only with people you know. You shouldn't share your personal information.

Al Azhar Corner

When you make a presentation, remember to be respectful. Don't copy information. Find ideas and write your own words.

UNIT 11

Practice on Lesson 1

My favorite transportation is the boat. I like watching the Nile by boat. When you travel on a boat, you are on water. The boat is a clean transportation.

Practice on Lesson 2

It's important to be safe on the roads. You need a seat belt in your car. You can cross the road when the light is green. You need to look left and right before you cross the road.

Practice on Lesson 3

Farida goes to school on foot. Farida's house is near the school. Farida crosses the road at the crosswalk. Farida never runs in the street.

Practice on Lesson 4

When we breathe polluted air, we cough and feel sick. Air pollution is dangerous for us. Dad goes to work with his friend in the same car. I cycle to school.

Test yourself on Unit 11

There are many means of public transportation in my city. There are cars and buses that move on the roads. Sami likes walking. Emad goes to work by car. Ali goes to work by bus. Eman doesn't like to be on water.

Al Azhar Corner

We need to be careful on the roads. We must cross the road at the crosswalk. We need a green light to cross the road.

UNIT 12

Dalia lives in a village in Egypt. She is doing her homework on her computer. She is doing research about crops in Egypt. Dalia looks at the pictures of delicious Egyptian bread.



نصوص استماع الامتحانات النهائية

Exam 1

My father says that his mom and dad drove gas cars. Gas cars were very noisy. Our town had a shopping area, but it was very far. My dad worked in a bookstore on Saturdays.

Exam 2

The Nile is the longest river in the world. That's like traveling to the center of the earth. The Nile has two branches in Egypt. The Nile crocodile is one of the largest reptiles.

Exam 3

Eid Al-Fitr is a Muslim festival. The month before Eid is called Ramadan. In Ramadan, Muslims fast during the day. People don't eat or drink until sunset. People eat kahk to celebrate Eid.

Exam 4

The Nile gives us water to drink and grow food. The Nile is the longest river in the world. The Nile has two branches in Egypt. The Nile is home for different kinds of fish, birds, and turtles.

Exam 5

To play "Pass the parcel," wrap a present in lots of paper. We need music to play "Pass the parcel." Players give the present to the next person. The player who is holding the present unwraps one piece of paper. The player who unwraps the present keeps it.

Exam 6

The chameleon is a kind of reptiles. They can change color. They are the same color as the place where they are. They have amazing eyes. They eat insects and leaves.

Exam 7

It's important to be safe on the road. You need to look right and left before you cross the road. You need a helmet on your bike. You need a green light to cross the road.

Exam 8

Grandpa's village was very quiet. There were no cars in the past. Now, there are a lot of trucks and cars. Grandpa was eight when he buried the box of memories.

Exam 9

Last weekend, we went to Damietta to visit our grandparents. They live by the sea. We swam in the water. Grandpa caught a fish. Grandma made it into a lovely dish.

Exam 10

It's important to be safe online. You should keep your password secret. You should accept to be friends only with people you know. You shouldn't share your personal information.

Exam 11

Our food can be described with one word: wonderful! Ful Medames is a very old dish. It is served with lots of olives and garlic. It is traditional food in Egypt. All people in Egypt like to eat ful for breakfast.

امتحانات الأزهر الشريف

Exam 1

The Nile is the longest river in the world. The Nile has two branches in Egypt. The Nile is home for different kinds of fish, birds, and turtles. The Nile crocodile is one of the largest reptiles.

Exam 2

The country mouse visited the city mouse in his hole. The country mouse was excited. The city was pretty and full of lights.

Writing Answers

يحتوى هذا الجزء على إجابات أسئلة الكتابة (براجراف) الخاصة بجميع الوحدات.

UNIT 7 Lesson 1

"The Nile"

The Nile is the longest river in the world. The Nile has two branches in Egypt. The Nile is home for different kinds of fish, birds, and turtles.

UNIT 7 Lesson 3

"Life in the country"

I love life in the country. Life in the country is slow and quiet. There are a lot of trees. There aren't many trucks or cars.

UNIT 7 Lessons 4 & 5

"My first day of school"

I remember my first day of school. I was very nervous. I didn't want to go to school. I carried my backpack. I walked into the classroom. My teacher was very kind.

Test yourself on Unit 7

"My town"

Our town was calm in the past. Now it's noisy. Our town had an old shopping area. Today, we have a big modern shopping mall.

UNIT 8 Lesson 1

Food and drinks

Mom made a special meal for us. I had two bottles of juice. My brother had a packet of cookies. My sister had a piece of bread.

UNIT 8 Lesson 2

"A trip to the sea"

Last week, I went on a trip to the sea with my family. We went to the beach. We swam in the sea. My dad caught a big fish. We had fun.

UNIT 8 Lesson 3

"Sham El-Nessim"

Sham El-Nessim is the oldest Egyptian festival. People go to the gardens with their families. They eat salted fish, onions, and also colored eggs.



UNIT 8 Lessons 4 & 5

"My special day"

We had a very special party yesterday. It was my grandma's birthday. All my family came together to celebrate. It was a very special day because our grandma was very happy.

Test yourself on Unit 8

"Eid Al-Fitr"

Eid Al-Fitr is a Muslim festival. Eid happens in the first day of the 10th Islamic month, called Shawwal. People eat kahk to celebrate. They say 'Eid Mubarak' to their friends.

UNIT 9 Lesson 1

"Hide and seek"

You need a wide place to play this game. One player, called the seeker, closes his or her eyes and counts to ten. The other players hide. The first player the seeker finds becomes the next seeker. The last one left is the winner.

UNIT 9 Lessons 4 & 5

"A birthday party"

My birthday is next week. It's on Sunday, April 12th. The party will be in my house garden. I will invite my friends. We will play some party games and eat cakes.

Test yourself on Unit 9

"My favorite party game"

I love party games. My favorite game is musical chairs. You need some chairs and music to play this game. I play it in the garden with my friends.

UNIT 10 Lesson 1

"Chameleons"

Chameleons are so interesting. They can change color. They have amazing eyes, and they can see all around.

UNIT 10 Lessons 4 & 5

"Computer games"

Some games are good for children because they make children solve problems. Some computer games need teams, so children make friends and play with their family.

Test yourself on Unit 10

"Social media"

Social media is when we use computers and other devices to share ideas and thoughts. We can have fun, share photos or talk to friends and family on social media.

UNIT 11 Lesson 1

" Transportation"

I love traveling on the road. I go to school by bus. We move slowly and I can see the city. My house is very far from my school.

UNIT 11 Lesson 2

"Road Safety"

To stay safe on the road, you need a helmet on your bike. You need a seat belt in your car. You need a green light to cross the road.

UNIT 11 Lesson 4

"Air Pollution"

Cars make air pollution. They put chemicals into the air. Air pollution is dangerous for us. When we breathe the polluted air, we cough and feel sick. We need to stop air pollution.

UNIT 11 Lessons 5 & 6

"Ideas to stop air pollution"

Cars make air pollution. There are some ideas to stop air pollution. We can use buses and trains more. We can walk and not always go by car. We can have many plants on our balconies.

Test yourself on Unit 11

"Transportation in my town"

I go to school by bus. I love traveling on the road. We travel slowly and I can see the city. The bus is my favorite transportation.

رقم الإيداع: 2024/20257

خدمة العملاء: 16766




AL ADWAA
Gem
CONNECT
Dictation Grade 4
كراسة تسميع الكلمات
الصف 4 الابتدائى
الفصل الدراسى الثانى
2024
2025

Unit 7 DICTATION



Lesson 1

قرية	....	مدينة	....
واحة	....	مبنى	....
جبل	....	نهر	....
اختبار	....	صحراء	....
نهر النيل	....	غابة	....
شيق / مثير للاهتمام	....	الأطول	....
حياة	....	الأقصر	....
مركز	....	الأرض	....
الأوسع	....	زواحف	....
فرع	....	متأكد	....
يحضر	....	يخمن	....
العالم	....	برج القاهرة	....
كيلو متر	....	نهر الأمازون	....
قمر	....	ربما	....
بوضوح	....	موطن (بيئة)	....
كوكب	....	تمساح	....
كلاهما	....	يقرر	....
يحاول	....	يبدو	....
يفحص	....	يسافر	....
يختار	....	يفكر	....
يعرف	....	يقول	....

Lesson 2

الكلمة		الكلمة	
متحمس	....	شاحنات	....
هادئ	....	فضولى	....
داخل	....	زوار	....
مكان	....	معدنى	....
ابتسامة	....	يعبر	....
يدفن	....	يحفر	....
يسحب	....	يتعجب	....
صندوق	....	عشب	....
طريق	....	سهل	....
مواد دراسية	....	ألعاب	....
شارع	....	يبدأ	....
يجلس	....	يعيش	....
يجد	....	يكبر	....
ذكريات	....	يشعر	....

الكلمة	الكتابة	الكلمة	الكتابة
الريف	....	مسرور	....
جميل	....	مبتهج	....
سبب	....	فئران	....
أصوات	....	الدرس الأخلاقى (العبرة)	....
لامع	....	دخان	....
أضواء	....	صاخب	....
ضوضاء	....	روائح	....
خائف	....	بذور	....
صوت (بشرى)	....	ينتظر	....
يمسك / يلحق	....	يغطي	....
يعطي	....	يعد / يجهز	....
يأتى	....	ثمانية	....
يذهب	....	قطار	....
بطيء	....	مطر	....
أنا	....	يرى	....
بشكل لا يصدق	....	ملكى	....
يتوقف	....	فجأة	....
يجرى	....	خبز	....
حفرة	....	لماذا	....

Lessons 4 & 5

Word	Answer
اليوم الأول	....
ألعاب	....
رمادى	....
صور	....
فصل دراسى	....
رياضيات	....
جيران	....
سيارات تعمل بالوقود	....
حديث	....
مزعج	....
يرتدى	....
يدرس	....
يقود	....
يحمل	....
تاريخ	....
مدينة صغيرة	....
بحث	....
مبان	....

Word	Answer
يمشى	....
عصبى / متوتر	....
حقيبة الظهر	....
بوابة	....
حى سكنى	....
مول تجارى	....
الكهرباء	....
بنطلون	....
منطقة تسوق	....
متجر أحذية	....
يتذكر	....
يبقى	....
يبكى	....
يتعلم	....
مشروع	....
طيب / عطوف	....
يتحدث	....
يجلس	....

Unit 8 DICTATION



Lesson 1

عبوة من الحلوى	....	عبوة من البسكويت (الكوكيز)	....
قالب من الصابون	....	قالب من الشيكولاتة	....
علبة من اللبن	....	علبة من العصير	....
زجاجة من عصير الليمون	....	زجاجة مياه	....
شريحة من اللحم	....	شريحة من الكيك	....
قطعة من الجبن	....	شريحة من البيتزا	....
قطعة من الخبز	....	حفلة	....
يتناول / يملك	....	عطشان	....
يشرب	....	يأكل	....
فظيع	....	ربما	....
فقط	....	طعام	....
كولا	....	يشعر	....

Lesson 2

عميق	....	قصيدة شعر	....
رحلة قصيرة	....	أخطبوط	....
طبق / وجبة	....	قنديل البحر	....
تحلية	....	زبادي	....
صور	....	وجبة	....
مجمد	....	فيلم	....
فيديو	....	قريبًا	....
يعيش	....	شاطئ	....
يستخدم	....	الوقت	....
اختبار السباحة	....	متعب	....
جميل	....	أغنية	....
الإجازة الأسبوعية	....	ذكرى	....
سكر	....	سبتمبر	....
صحى	....	يتذكر	....

Lesson 3

Word	
مسجد	
عيد الفصح القبط	
احتفال	
أمريكى	
مسلم	
شهر شوال	
معلومات	
رمضان	
مختلف	
لذيذ	
مخبز	
أقدم	
بعد	
يدُرس	
مهرجان / عيد	
نزهة	
عيد الفطر	
شهر إسلامى (هجرى)	
عيد مبارك / عيد سعيد	
عيد شم النسيم	
غروب الشمس	
كعك	
مقالة	
عسل	
مكسرات	
يصوم	
يعنى / يقصد	
يقضى	
يحتفل	
يحدث	
يضيف	
سمك مملح	
ملون	
بسكويت	

Lessons 4 & 5

عيد الكريسماس	....	والدة الجدة	....
مميز	....	يزين	....
أولاد العم	....	شجرة الكريسماس	....
عم / خال	....	عيد ميلاد	....
سلطة	....	عمة / خالة	....
كاتب	....	ضخم	....
دول	....	خبز	....
حياة جديدة	....	كرات ملونة	....
رموز	....	يمثل	....
يلقي (يرمى)	....	يغنى	....
يأتى	....	يلعب	....

Unit 9 DICTATION



Lesson 1

يلعب الألعاب	....
يعطى الهدايا	....
يغلف الهدايا	....
يفتح الهدايا	....
أطفال	....
مشهور / محبوب	....
فائز	....
شخص	....
يغلف	....
يمسك	....
يعد	....
يحتفظ بـ	....
يضع	....
ورق	....
دائرة	....
بدون	....

فريق	....
لعبة الغميضة	....
لعبة نقل الطرود	....
لعبة الكراسى الموسيقية	....
تشغل الموسيقى	....
تقليدى	....
جاهز	....
واسع	....
الباحث	....
ينضم	....
يغطى	....
يصبح	....
يبحث	....
زفاف	....
خارجًا	....
الأخير	....

Lesson 2

سفريات / رحلات	....	دحرجة الجبن	....
غريب	....	مهرجان الطائرة الورقية	....
رائع	....	عيد رأس السنة الصينية	....
تل / هضبة	....	مهرجان الطماطم	....
تقاليد	....	مضحك	....
وسيلة / طريقة	....	ظرف	....
كمية / مقدار	....	سخيف / غبى	....
طين	....	وحوش	....
حى (على قيد الحياة)	....	تنين	....
يفهم	....	يدفع	....
يجرح / يؤذى	....	يتمنى	....
مستدير	....	فوضوى	....
وجوه ضاحكة	....	يوان (عملة صينية)	....
رقم زوجى	....	ملون	....
حظ سعيد	....	خيط / حبل	....
إسبانيا	....	يطير	....
الهند	....	يحضر	....

Lesson 3

حلو (مسكر)	....	فول مدمس	....
زيت الزيتون	....	بسبوسة	....
ثوم	....	كاراتيه	....
دقيق السميد	....	تاريخ	....
متعاون	....	غنى	....
شراب السكر	....	ثقافة	....
زوار	....	منطقة سيناء	....
مضياف	....	مؤلفون	....
شرق	....	يستمر	....
جنوب	....	حريص	....
مؤلم	....	مفيد	....
أفكار	....	صحراء	....
طاقة	....	جبال	....
جوائز	....	مملح	....
فخور	....	سن / عمر	....
ودود	....	طبيعة	....
وطني	....	يطبخ	....
يغطى بالثلج	....	يفوز	....

Lessons 4 & 5

تيشيرت	....	حفلة عيد ميلاد	....
عزيزى	....	عنوان	....
طريق	....	دعوة	....
ضيوف	....	مفقود	....
ساحة المدرسة	....	مكتبة	....
شورت	....	يتخيل	....
يأمل	....	يدعو	....
معلومات	....	الألعاب الجماعية	....
احتفال صفى	....	يوم رياضى	....

Unit 10 DICTATION



Lesson 1

موقع المكتبة الإلكترونى	....	يحادث / محادثة	....
مذهل / مدهش	....	كلمة المرور	....
محترم / متسم بالاحترام	....	يجرى بحثًا	....
عرض تقديمى	....	يقوم بتسجيل الدخول	....
يغير	....	حرباء	....
ينسخ	....	موقع إلكترونى	....
يخطط	....	ينشئ	....
بحث	....	جهاز لوحى (تابلت)	....
هاتف خلوى (محمول)	....	يكتب	....
يراسل / رسالة	....	يحصل على	....

Lesson 2

وسائل التواصل الاجتماعى	....	أفكار	....
شخص بالغ	....	آمن	....
أجهزة	....	مبدع	....
غبى	....	التنمر	....
بشع / قبيح	....	معلومات شخصية	....
مخيف	....	متأخر	....
يتصل	....	بسرعة	....
يشير إلى/ يضع علامة	....	يشارك	....
يقبل	....	يتنمر	....
آراء	....	قوى	....
سر / سرى	....	الوالدان	....

Lesson 3

مطعم	....	جار	....
ابن	....	مشكلة	....
شقة	....	ألعاب الكمبيوتر	....
جميل / رائع	....	غير صحي	....
يجيب	....	يسأل	....
يقابل	....	يحب	....
يوافق	....	معًا	....

Lessons 4 & 5

شاشة	....	فريق	....
جائزة	....	التنمر على الإنترنت	....
بالخارج	....	سبب	....
نصيحة	....	يحل	....
يحاور	....	إيجابيات	....

Unit 11 DICTATION



Lesson 1

الكلمة		الكلمة	
مترو الأنفاق	....	يمسك / يلحق بـ	....
مطار	....	أتوبيس	....
سكة حديد	....	مركب (قارب)	....
الهواء / الجو	....	طائرة	....
مياه	....	قطار	....
طريق	....	سيارة	....
عام	....	سفينة	....
مدينة صغيرة	....	متأخر	....
سيارة أجرة (تاكسى)	....	بعيد	....
نقل / مواصلات	....	يسافر	....
يذهب	....	مركبة	....
قدم	....	وسائل / طرق	....
أرض	....	مدينة الأقصر	....
اختبار قصير	....	يجري مقابلة	....

Lesson 2

الكلمة		الكلمة	
حزام أمان	....	خوذة	....
يسار	....	ضوء	....
جمل	....	يمين	....
بأمان	....	مستقيم	....
ينعطف	....	يركن (السيارة / الدراجة)	....
يحتاج	....	يعبر	....
يسبح / يعوم	....	يركب	....
يظهر / يوضح	....	إشارات / لافتات الطريق	....
آمن	....	أمان / سلامة	....

Lesson 3

منتصف	....	دراجة بخارية	....
مصدوم	....	سيارة إسعاف	....
بسرعة شديدة	....	ممر مشاة	....
حذر / حريص	....	مستشفى	....
شاب صغير السن	....	خائف	....
يستدعي / يتصل بـ	....	يتبع	....
يقود	....	يسقط	....
مدينة كبيرة	....	يجرح	....
شاحنة	....	زحمة	....
مطر	....	يصطدم	....
حلزون	....	يطفو	....
معطف	....	حلم	....
بحر	....	شارع	....
ينظف / نظيف	....	طريق	....

Lesson 4

الكلمة		الكلمة	
متسخ	....	مواد كيمائية	....
لندن	....	خطير	....
إنجلترا	....	أتوبيسات كهربائية	....
حرق	....	قش الارز	....
الصين	....	عملية البناء الضوئى	....
قلق	....	مرض الربو	....
الطاقة الشمسية	....	جهاز التدفئة	....
ممتاز	....	نمو	....
ظل	....	يتنفس	....
يسمح	....	يركب الدراجة	....
يضع	....	محاصيل زراعية	....
موضوع	....	متجددة	....
باريس	....	ابن	....
تلوث	....	يكح	....

Lessons 5 & 6

الكلمة	الكتابة	الكلمة	الكتابة
أنقى	....	مصابيح	....
بلكونة / شرفة	....	حركة المرور	....
مشاكل التنفس	....	بنزين	....
شقة	....	تقرير	....
هواء نقي	....	يسمع	....
هام	....	يزيد	....
موفرة للكهرباء	....	ببطء	....

Unit 12 DICTATION



قرية	....	قمح	....
خبز بلدى (عيش بلدى)	....	محصول	....
بسكويت (كوكيز)	....	قناة الرى	....
زجاجات بلاستيكية	....	الرى	....
قمامة	....	دقيق القمح	....
أكياس قمامة	....	ذرة	....
بشكل جيد	....	مهم	....
بسيط	....	شيق	....
وسائل التواصل الاجتماعى	....	ينادى / يتصل	....
يقابل	....	يحصل على	....
مشكلة	....	الميدان الرئيسى	....
شاى	....	يوصل / يحضر	....
ملوثة	....	أغراض منزلية	....
أرض	....	فخور	....
ينتج	....	أجداد	....
رائع	....	عميق	....
مرة أخرى / مجددًا	....	يبيع	....
تغييرات	....	حقول	....
زراعة	....	لذيذ (شهى)	....